Frontispiec.

G Bickham In: sculp

Frontispiec.

G Bickham In: sculp

THE BRITISH ANGLER:

OR, A

POCKET-COMPANION FOR GENTLEMEN-FISHERS.

BEING A

New and Methodical Treatise of the ART of ANGLING: Comprehending all that is Curious and Useful in the Knowledge of that Polite Diversion. As:

I. An *Introduction*; containing an Encomium on Rivers and the Art of Angling, with general Observations on the Nature of Fish.

II. The *Angler's Apparatus*: Or, Directions concerning *Rods*, *Lines*, *Hooks*, *Floats*, and the rest of the Tackle: Also, of *Baits*, Natural and Artificial.

III. An *exact Description* of the several Kinds of *Fish* that are found in the *Rivers*, and on the *Sea-Coasts* of *Great Britain*; their Size, Shape, Qualities, Seasons, Feeding, Haunts, *&c.*

IV. *The whole Practice of Angling*: Teaching the Choice and Preparation of proper Stands; the Method of Taking every Species, more particularly the sportive *Trout*, the voracious *Pike*, and other Capital Game. With Descriptions of our principal Rivers, Observations relating to the Weather, and other necessary Remarks.

Together with

Supplemental DISCOURSES, 1. On Fish-ponds and Reservatories. 2. On the Laws against Poachers, and in Favour of the Fair Angler.

ALSO,

Excellent RECEIPTS for Dressing of Fish, and a Complete INDEX, in which the Terms in Use among Anglers are occasionally explained.

Embellished with Copper-Plates Curiously Engraved.

The Whole Compiled from approved Authors, and above Thirty Years Experience,

By *JOHN WILLIAMSON*, Gent.

Who has added a Versification of the principal Heads, at the End of each Chapter, for the Help of Memory.

LONDON:

Printed for J. HODGES, at the *Looking-Glass* on *London-Bridge*, MDCCXL.

47
3 / 13.
1213.

THE PREFACE.

IF *a Man was to read over all the* Books of Angling *that have been publiſhed for about a Hundred Years paſt, he would be apt to think that this Science was like Poetry, not only for Mr.* Walton's *Reaſon, becauſe Men muſt be born with Inclinations to it, but becauſe it ſeems to have arrived at its higheſt Perfection almoſt at once, and to have been the ſame in the ſaid Mr.* Walton *as the other was in* Homer.

The Improvements that have been made by the generality of Writers ſince his Time are indeed ſo few, and for the moſt Part ſo trivial, rather adding to and perplexing his Words, like the Commentators on the Greek *Poet, than either clearing up or enlarging his Senſe, that I could not but wonder at ſeeing ſo much done to ſo little Purpoſe. As I had reſolved therefore to give the Public a new Treatiſe on this Subject, which I knew was very much wanted, and not likely, as I could hear, to be undertaken by any abler Hand, it was my Buſineſs to conſider what Methods I ſhould take to avoid the Imputation ſo generally thrown on others, and compoſe a Work that ſhould have in Fact what it promiſed, an Air of Novelty. How I have proceeded, is what I am now to inform the Reader.*

All that was ſolid, and had the Teſt of Experience to confirm it, in the Old Writers, I have retained; leaving out, and ſometimes briefly refuting, their falſe Reaſonings, idle ſuperſtitious Obſervances, and weak fabulous Accounts of Natural Cauſes. The Improvements that have lately been made in experimental Philoſophy enabled me to do this, and will help every careful Writer to perform as much, or perhaps more, in any other Branch of Knowledge that depends thereon. This was all I could promiſe myſelf in the Article of retrenching; *and if I have given any new Ornaments to what is left, by making the Language either more modern or more per-*

ſpi-

ſpicuous, I believe it is all that can be expected by others.

The great Difficulty was to find ſufficient to add. For this, beſides my own Obſervations, which I was not ſo vain as to depend much on, unleſs they had the Concurrence of others, I have gathered up all that I could from the Converſation of my Angling Friends, whoſe good Nature in this reſpect I cannot but acknowledge. I have alſo found ſomething in one or two of the moſt modern Books, which however I have been ſparing in the Uſe of, as thinking it fairer to let their Authors ſpeak for themſelves. The moſt I have borrowed is on the Articles of Thames and Rock-fiſhing, and that I have ſo much reduced, that it can be no Prejudice to any larger Account. Almoſt every Angler about London knows as much of the Thames as is neceſſary, and very few have either Opportunity or Inclination to purſue the other.

But the great Advantage, as well as Ornament of this Book, and which muſt eminently diſtinguiſh it from all others, is the Poetical Part, which cannot but be equally uſeful and entertaining. I dare ſpeak ſo highly of it, becauſe a great Number of the Lines are by Writers of the firſt Rank. It was my remembring ſo many of theſe, and at the ſame Time lighting on an ingenious little Book called The Innocent Epicure, which more than doubled my Quantity, that firſt put me in

the

the Head of thus adding a Summary in Verſe to each Chapter. What was not already done, I was obliged to attempt myſelf, and even to alter and adjuſt much of what was, to make it correſpond with my Plan; which, with the Execution of it, I now leave to the candid and impartial Reader.

J. W.

CON-

CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION. Page 1
Sect. 1. *The Beauty and Uſefulneſs of Rivers* 2
Sect. 2. *An Encomium on the Art of Angling* 5
Sect. 3. *General Obſervations on the Nature of Fiſh* 14

Part I. Containing the Angler's Apparatus.

Chap. 1. *Of Angling Rods* 32
Chap. 2. *Of Lines* 39
Chap. 3. *Of Hooks, Floats, Plummets, Landing-hooks, and Landing-nets, with other Utenſils* 50
Chap. 4. *Of natural Baits; particularly of Earth-worms, Caterpillars, Grubs, Cadews, and Gentles* 62
Chap. 5. *A Continuation of natural Baits; particularly Blood, Grain, Fiſh and Fiſh-ſpawn, Fruits, Flies, and other Inſects* 82
Chap. 6. *Of Paſtes and Unguents* 96
Chap. 7. *Of Artificial, or Dub Flies* 106

Part II. Containing a Deſcription of the ſeveral Sorts of Fiſh.

Chap. 1. *Of the* Salmon 128
Chap. 2. *Of the* Trout 139
Chap. 3. *Of the* Umber *or* Grayling 153
Chap. 4. *Of the* Pike, Jack, *or* Luce 156
Chap. 5. *Of the* Perch 181
Chap. 6. *Of the* Carp 185
Chap. 7. *Of the* Tench 193
Chap. 8. *Of the* Barbel 197

Chap.

Chap. 9. *Of the* Bream 201
Chap. 10. *Of the* Chub *or* Chevin 210
Chap. 11. *Of the* Eel 216
Chap. 12. *Of the* Roach *and the* Rud 223
Chap. 13. *Of the* Dace 226
Chap. 14. *Of the* Gudgeon 231
Chap. 15. *Of the* Pope *or* Ruff 233
Chap. 16. *Of the* Bleak 235
Chap. 17. *Of the* Minnow *or* Penk, *the* Loach, *the* Bull-head *or* Miller's Thumb, *and the* Stickle-bag 236
Chap. 18. *Of* Local Fiſhes, *or thoſe which are peculiar to certain Waters* 240
Chap. 19. *Of* Flounders, Mullets, Smelts 242
Chap. 20. *Of Fiſh taken on the Rocks, and at Sea* 246

Part III. Teaching the whole Practice of Angling.

Chap. 1. *General Obſervations regarding the Angler and his Sport* 250
Chap. 2. *Of the Seaſons proper for Angling* 262
Chap. 3. *Of the principal Rivers in* England, *and particularly of the* Thames 271
Chap. 4. *Of the various Methods of Angling* 279
Chap. 5. *Of Rock and Sea-Fiſhing* 295

APPENDIX.

Diſ. I. *Of Fiſh-Ponds* 301
Diſ. II. *Of the Laws of Angling* 306
Receipts for the Dreſſing of Fiſh 312

THE

THE *British* ANGLER.

INTRODUCTION.

The Beauty and Uſefulneſs of Rivers. An Encomium on the Art of Angling. General Obſervations on the Nature of Fiſh.

BEFORE I enter upon the Theory of the Art of Angling, it is neceſſary that I ſhould endeavour to remove thoſe Prejudices which are too commonly brought againſt it, and to recommend a Diverſion which is not only the moſt innocent, but may be made the moſt advantageous, both to the Body and the Mind, of any that ever has been invented. And firſt let us ſurvey the Seat of this Diverſion, the Banks of a River.

SECT. I.

The Beauty and Uſefulneſs of Rivers.

WHAT a delightful Scene, ſays a late Author, is a ſoft murmuring Stream! Whether we reflect on the gentle Motion of its Waters, or on the various Benefits and Advantages ariſing from it, or uſe our Endeavours to trace it to its Head; we are charmed with its gliding in ſuch beautiful Meanders: The numberleſs Accommodations it affords us, fill us with the moſt grateful Acknowledgments, and our Curioſity is excited, to the laſt Degree, by the Obſcurity of its Original.

Let us conſider it in its gradual Progreſſion and Increaſe. It is at firſt nothing more than a Vein of Water, iſſuing from ſome Hill, upon a Bed of Sand or Clay. The little Stones that are diſperſed round about, are ſufficient to interrupt its Current. It turns and winds, and murmurs as it rolls along. At laſt it clears its Way, falls in a Torrent down upon the Plains, and ſwells, by being united with ſome other Streams. It hollows the Ground by the Rapidity of its Fall, and throws up the Earth on each Side of it. It inſenſibly forces its way thro' every Thing that obſtructs its Paſſage, and digs a Bed or Channel for itſelf. The Overflowing of the adjacent Ponds, the Snow that melts, and trickles

trickles down the Hills, and the additional Supplies of various Brooks and Rills that fall into it, fortify and enrich it. Then it aſſumes a Name, and ſteers its Courſe along the Sides of flowry Meads: It takes a Tour all round the Hills, and graces, as it turns and winds, the ſpacious Plains.

'Tis the general Rendezvous of almoſt all Kind of living Creatures. A Thouſand little parti-coloured Birds, of various Notes, divert themſelves upon its ſandy Banks, ſkim o'er its Surface, dip their Wings in its refreſhing Streams, and ſometimes plunge to the Bottom in purſuit of Game. This is their favourite Place all Day; and when the Approach of Night compels them to withdraw, they quit it with Reluctance. The numerous Herds forſake their Paſtures twice a Day to pay their viſit to the Streams, in which they quench their Thirſt, or ſeek ſome cool Retreat. In a Word, the River is as delightful to Man, as it is to the Birds and Beaſts: We generally reject the Hills and Woods, and fix our Habitations on its Banks.

It enriches the Fiſhermen with a Profuſion of its Stores, and refreſhes the Farmer's thirſty Soil. It adorns the pompous Seats of the Nobility with the moſt delightful Proſpects, and makes the Country every way agreeable: It pays a Viſit to thoſe large Towns that are indebted to its friendly Streams for all their Wealth and Commerce: There it majeſtically rolls along between two Rows of coſtly

Buildings, which not only adorn, but are adorned by it. The inceſſant Concourſe of People, the Multitude of Carriages of all Sorts, that are for ever paſſing over its Bridges; the infinite Number of Boats, and other Veſſels, that are conſtantly floating on its Surface; in ſhort, thoſe agreeable, but confuſed Sounds that are heard, not only over its Waters, but all along its Kays, give us at once the Idea of Trade and Opulence.

The principal Aim of Divine Providence in the Formation of Rivers, was, no doubt, to furniſh both Man and Beaſt with one of the moſt neceſſary Ornaments of Life; one that will either refreſh us when we are faint and thirſty, keep our Habitations as well as our Bodies clean and wholeſome, and not only dreſs our daily Proviſions, but adorn our Table with the moſt delicate Part of them. Paſſing over the Golden Sands, that in ſome Countries roll down their Streams, we may always apply to our Rivers for this other Kind of Treaſure, which we ſhall find with more Certainty, and procure with greater Eaſe. Tho' the infinite Variety of Fiſh with which the Sea abounds for our Refreſhment and Delight, ſeems a perfect Prodigy; yet thoſe which our Rivers nouriſh and ſupport are ſtill more ſurpriſing. And if the Fiſhes did not, by Inſtinct, put in Practice a Thouſand artful Stratagems for the Preſervation of their Species, which contribute at the ſame Time as much to our Advantage and Pleaſure,

ſure, as their own Safety, they would never be able, in ſo ſmall a Compaſs of Water, to avoid the numberleſs Snares and Engines that are every where planted, in order to ſurpriſe them. But of theſe Engines, which are moſt of them unfair, and highly prejudicial to the Gentleman Angler, I ſhall take no other Notice than to condemn the Uſe of them, and proceed to the Conſideration of the Art of Angling, which is the Subject of this Treatiſe.

SECT. II.

An Encomium on the Art of Angling.

I Call Angling an *Art*, and an Art it is worthy a wiſe Man's learning. It is, ſaid an excellent Angler, ſomewhat like Poetry; Men muſt be born with Inclinations to it; tho' both may be improved by Converſation and Practice. He that expects to be a good Angler, ſhould not only poſſeſs a penetrating Wit, but a large Meaſure of Hope and Patience, and a Propenſity to the Art itſelf: But having once acquired and practiſed it, Angling will then prove ſo pleaſant, that, like Virtue, it will be a Reward to itſelf.

Some ſay that Angling is as antient as *Deucalion*'s Flood: Others that *Belus*, who was the firſt Inventor of virtuous Recreations, was alſo the firſt Angler; and others again, that *Seth*, one of the Sons of *Adam*, taught it to his Children,

and that by them it was derived to Poſterity. Laſtly, there are ſome who maintain that he left it engraven on thoſe Pillars, which he erected, to perpetuate the Knowledge of the Mathematicks, Muſick, and the reſt of thoſe uſeful Arts, which, by God's Allowance, and his own Induſtry, were preſerved from periſhing in *Noah*'s Flood. Poſſibly the Authors of all theſe Opinions have endeavoured to make Angling more antient than can juſtly be warranted: But of this we are certain, that it was practiſed long before the Incarnation of our Saviour: For in the Prophet *Amos* mention is made of Fiſh-hooks; and in the Book of *Job*, which is thought to have been written by *Moſes*, they are again mentioned; which muſt imply Anglers in thoſe Times.

And as for the *Utility* of this Diverſion, we muſt conſider an antient Queſtion, which remains yet unreſolved, Whether the Happineſs of Man in this World conſiſts more in Contemplation or Action? Thoſe who maintain the firſt Opinion, argue, That the nearer we Mortals come to God by Way of Imitation, the more happy we are. God, ſay they, enjoys himſelf only by a Contemplation of his own Infinity, Eternity, Power, Goodneſs, and other Attributes. Upon this Ground many Perſons of great Learning and Devotion prefer Contemplation before Action: And ſeveral of the Fathers ſeem to approve

prove this Opinion, as may appear in their Commentaries upon the Words of our Saviour to *Martha*. But then, on the contrary, there want not other Men of equal Authority and Credit, who prefer an active Life, especially when it contributes to the Good of others, either of their Country in general, or of particular Persons. Action, according to them, is doctrinal; it teaches both Art and Virtue, and preserves human Society; and for these, and other like Reasons, is to be preferred before Contemplation.

Without pretending to determine between these two Opinions, it is sufficient to say, that both Contemplation and Action here meet together, and belong properly to the honest, ingenuous, quiet, and innocent Art of Angling. The very sitting by the River's Side, is not only the calmest and fittest Place for Contemplation, but will invite an Angler to it. Hence the learned *Peter du Moulin* observes, that when God intended to reveal any future Events or high Notions to his Prophets, he usually carried them either to the Desarts or the Sea-shore, that having so separated them from amidst the Multitude of People and Business, and the Cares of the World, he might settle their Minds in a quiet Repose, and render them fit to receive the Revelation. And this seems also to be intimated by the Children of *Israel*, who having in their Captivity banished all Mirth and Musick from their pensive Hearts, and hung up their mute

Harps upon the Willows by the Rivers of *Babylon*; ſat down upon thoſe Banks bemoaning the Ruins of *Sion*, and contemplating their own ſad Condition. An ingenious *Spaniard* therefore very juſtly ſays, That Rivers and the Inhabitants of the watry Element were made for wiſe Men to contemplate, and Fools to paſs by without Conſideration. Doubtleſs it was for the ſame Reaſon that the Prophet *David* expreſſes himſelf thus: *They that occupy themſelves in deep Waters, ſee the wonderful Works of God.* Such Wonders indeed as the Land does not afford.

And that the Waters are fit for the Contemplation of the moſt prudent, pious, and peaceable Men, ſeems to be teſtified by the Practice of ſo many devout and contemplative Perſons, as the Patriarchs, Prophets, and Apoſtles of Old. Of theſe latter, we are ſure our Saviour choſe four of the twelve that were ſimple Fiſhermen, whom he ſent to publiſh his Will to the *Gentiles*, and inſpired with a Power to ſpeak all Languages, and by their mighty Eloquence to beget Faith in the unbelieving Jews; to preach Freedom from the Incumbrances of the Law, and a new Way to everlaſting Life. This was the Employment of theſe happy Fiſhermen; and it has been obſerved, that Chriſt never reproved them on Account of their Calling, as he did the Scribes and the Money-Changers. He found that the Hearts of ſuch Men, by Nature, were fitted for Quietneſs and Contem-

temptation; that they were Men of mild, ſweet, and peaceable Spirits. Theſe our bleſſed Saviour, who loves to plant Grace in good Natures, choſe to call from their irreproachable Employment of Fiſhing, and conſtitute them his Diſciples, enabling them to follow him, and to do Wonders. Nay, theſe four Fiſhermen had a Priority of Nomination in the Catalogue of his twelve Apoſtles, which are reckoned, 1. St. *Peter*, 2. St. *Andrew*, 3. St. *James*, 4. St. *John*, and the reſt in their Order. And when our bleſſed Saviour went up into the Mount, and left the reſt of his Diſciples, chuſing only three to bear him Company at his Transfiguration, thoſe three were all Fiſhermen. Nor do we want Arguments to make it believed, that all the other Apoſtles, after they became Followers of Chriſt, became alſo Fiſhermen: For it is certain that the greater Number of them were found together Fiſhing by *Jeſus* after his Reſurrection, as it is recorded in St. *John*'s Goſpel.

It has been judiciouſly remarked, that tho' God every where inſpires the Matter of the ſacred Writings, yet he ſuffers the holy Penmen to expreſs his Will in ſuch Stile and Metaphors as their former Affections or Practice had made familiar to them. Thus *Solomon*, for Example, who before his Converſion was remarkably amorous, after his Repentance wrote that ſpiritual Dialogue, or holy Love-ſong, the *Canticles*, betwixt God and his Church; in

which he ſays his Beloved had *Eyes like the Fiſh-pools of* Heſhbon. And if this Remark will hold good in general, by the ſame Rule it may be probably concluded, that *Moſes*, who wrote the Book of *Job*, and the Prophet *Amos*, who was a Shepherd, were both Anglers. But this may more eſpecially be preſumed of *Amos*, whoſe humble, lowly, plain Stile, when compared with the pompous and lofty Eloquence of the Prophet *Iſaiah*, will eaſily induce us to believe him to be not only a Shepherd, but a good-natured honeſt Fiſherman. And much the ſame may be obſerved in comparing the affectionate, loving, and pathetic Epiſtles of St. *Peter*, St. *James*, and St. *John*, who we know were all Fiſhers, with the ſublime Language and high Metaphors of St. *Paul*, who we are pretty certain was not.

As for the Lawfulneſs of Fiſhing to a Profeſſor of Chriſtianity, it may be maintained from our Saviour's Practice, who bade St. *Peter* caſt his Hook into the Water and take out a Fiſh, for Money to pay Tribute to the *Roman* Emperor.

We may even add the Dignity of this Art to its other Advantages, it having been the Amuſement of mighty Kings and conſecrated Prieſts. *Mark Anthony* and *Cleopatra*, in the Midſt of their dazzling Glory, uſed Angling as a principal Recreation. And he that reads the antient Eccleſiaſtical Canons, will find Hunting forbidden to Churchmen, as being a tur-

turbulent, toilsome, and fatiguing Recreation; but that Angling is allowed to them, as being a harmless Diversion, a Recreation that invites them to Calmness and Contemplation.

Mr. *Walton*, from whom I have extracted much of this Encomium on Angling (which is almost the only Part of his Book that has not been transcribed by all who since him have wrote on that Art) proceeds to mention several Men of our own Nation who were accomplished Anglers. The two he chiefly insists on, are Dr. *Nowell* and Sir *Henry Wotton*; his Characters of whom I shall here insert, with little Variation from his own Words. Dr. *Nowell*, sometime Dean of the Cathedral of St. *Paul*'s in *London*, where his Monument stands yet undefaced, in the Reformation of Queen *Elizabeth*, was so noted for his meek Spirit, deep Learning, Prudence, and Piety, that the then Parliament and Convocation, chose, enjoined, and trusted him to compile a Catechism for publick Use, to stand as a Rule for Faith and Manners to their Posterity. And the good old Man, though he was very learned, like an honest Angler, made that plain, unperplex'd Form of Words which is printed with our Service Book. This excellent Man was as dear a Lover and constant Practicer of Angling as any Age can produce: His Custom was to spend, besides his fix'd Hours of Prayer, a tenth Part of his Time in that Diversion, and also (for I have conversed with those, says Mr. *Walton*,

Walton, who have converſed with him) to beſtow a tenth Part of his Revenue, and uſually all his Fiſh, amongſt the Poor that inhabited near thoſe Rivers in which they were caught. And at his Return to his Houſe he would praiſe God that he had ſpent that Day free from worldly Trouble, both harmleſsly, and in a Recreation that became a Churchman. Nay he was even content, if not deſirous, that Poſterity ſhould know he was an Angler, which is evident from his Picture, now carefully kept in *Braſen-Noſe-College*, where he is drawn leaning on a Deſk with his Bible before him; on one Hand of him his Lines, Hooks, and other Tackling lying in a Round; and on the other his Angle-Rods of ſeveral Sorts, with this Inſcription by them: *That he died* 13 Feb. 1601, *aged* 95 *Years*, 44 *of which he had been Dean of St.* Paul's *Church*; *and that his Age had neither impaired his Hearing*, *nor dimm'd his Eyes*, *nor weakened his Memory*, *nor made any of the Faculties of his Mind weak or uſeleſs*. 'Tis ſaid that Angling and Temperance were two great Cauſes of theſe ineſtimable Bleſſings.

Our Author's next and laſt Example is, that Deſpiſer of Money Sir *Henry Wotton*, with whom he had often fiſhed and converſed. A Man whoſe foreign Employments in the Service of this Nation, and whoſe Experience, Learning, Wit, and Chearfulneſs, made his Company to be eſteemed one of the Delights of Mankind; and whoſe very Approbation of

An-

Angling is alone sufficient to outweigh all unjust Censure. Sir *Henry* was not only a most dear Lover, and a frequent Practiser of the Art of Angling; but would often say of it, *It was an Employment for his idle Time, which was not then idly spent: For Angling, after tedious Study, was a Rest to his Mind, a Chearer of his Spirits, a Diverter of Sadness, a Calmer of unquiet Thoughts, a Moderator of Passions, a Procurer of Contentedness; and that it begat Habits of Peace and Patience in those who professed and practised it.* In a Word, he found Angling to be like the Virtue of Humility, which has a Calmness of Spirit, and a World of other Blessings attending upon it.

The following Lines, written by him at above 70 Years of Age, may give an Idea of his Temper.

This Day Dame Nature seem'd in love,
The lusty Sap began to move;
Fresh Juice did stir th' embracing Vines,
And Birds had drawn their Valentines:
The jealous Trout, *that low did lie,*
Rose at a well-dissembled Fly.
There stood my Friend with patient Skill,
Attending of his trembling Quill.
The Groves already did rejoice
In Philomel's *triumphing Voice:*
The Showers were short; the Weather mild;
The Morning fresh; the Evening smil'd.
Thus all look'd gay, and full of Chear,
To welcome the new-livery'd Year.

SECT.

SECT. III.

General Obſervations on the Nature of Fiſh.

HAVING thus endeavoured to vindicate the Reputation of Angling, and in particular to ſhew how very ſuitable it is to a contemplative Perſon, I proceed to direct the Gentleman Angler in the moſt natural Road of Meditation, by pointing out to him ſo much of the Properties and Mechaniſm of Fiſh in general, as may enable him to conſider them with Underſtanding, and to form judiciouſly ſuch Obſervations as may occur to him in the Purſuit of his Diverſion. Every Thing I ſhall offer will be the Reſult of Experience, and what has been communicated by the moſt diligent Inſpectors into Nature. The Points I ſhall here chiefly inſiſt on, are, The Element peculiar to Fiſh; their Clothing; their Numbers; the regular Paſſage of ſome Species; their Wars, and the Means of their Preſervation; their Fecundity, and the Purpoſe of it; their Food; the natural Cauſe of their Swimming, with the peculiar Uſe of their Tails, Fins, Bags of Air, and Gills; their other Parts; their Cunning; their Senſations, and the extraordinary Share of Life in ſome Kinds of them.

The Univerſe abounds with an infinite Variety of living Creatures. Some are Inhabitants

habitants of the Air; others range around the Fields, or crawl upon the Ground: Thouſands reſide in the inmoſt Receſſes of Woods, in the Hearts of Leaves, and under the Bark of Trees: Some in the Chinks and Crevices of Walls; and others in the moſt gloomy Caverns. The very Bowels of the Earth are hollowed, and filled with Inhabitants. All theſe Animals, how different ſoever from each other, with reſpect to their Nature and Way of Life, enjoy one Benefit in common: They all breathe the fluid Air. But we have, at preſent, another Element under our Conſideration, wherein all of them are ſtifled as ſoon as they are plunged into it. Yet we therein diſcover a vaſt Variety of Beings; and obſerve, that as Terreſtial Animals are ſuffocated in the Waves; ſo the Inhabitants of the watry Regions ſoon expire in the Air, and cannot long ſubſiſt out of that Element, to which they are conſigned.

But it is hard to comprehend how their Blood ſhould circulate with that Freedom, which it indiſputably does; for one would think it ſhould coagulate and condenſe by the exceſſive Chilneſs of the Waters. Such Animals as live upon the Earth, are either furniſhed with Feathers, and a delicate Down, or inveſted with warm Furs, or long Hairs, to defend them from the Inclemencies of the Air, which is ſometimes exceedingly cold: But no Fiſh, as we can find, have any ſuch agreeable Accommodations. How then has Nature provided for them, that they are able to ſubſiſt

ſiſt in an Element much colder than the Air?

Let us recollect what we have often diſcovered, as we have been accidentally handling a Fiſh, or cutting one open. The firſt Thing that offers itſelf to our Touch, is a certain glutinous Matter, with which the whole Surface of the Creature's Body is duly moiſtened. We find, moreover, a Coat, conſiſting of ſtrong and beautiful Scales; and before we come to the Animal's Fleſh, we obſerve a Kind of Lard, or oily Subſtance, which extends from Head to Tail, and ſurrounds the Whole. Tho' we cannot eaſily conceive how theſe Scales are formed, or how they gradually increaſe and are ſupplied, or what is the Origin and Reſervoir of this Oil; yet theſe Scales by their Solidity, and this Oil by its Antipathy to the Water, keep the Fiſh warm, and give him Life and Vigour. He could not poſſibly be furniſhed with a lighter Veſtment, or one more impenetrable.

The Sea carries off from the Lands, which it waſhes, a Vitriol and Bitumen, that, like itſelf, being in a perpetual Motion, diſperſe and incorporate in ſuch a Manner with the ſmalleſt Particles of the Water, that no Filtrations, no Alembicks, or any other Devices, how artful ſoever, have been able to purify and free it from its brackiſh Taſte. It is in this nauſeous and offenſive Water however, that the all-wiſe Creator has thought fit to improve and bring to Perfection the Fleſh of thoſe Fiſh which the moſt

Volup-

Voluptuous prefer before the choiceſt Fowls. In an Element that produces nothing, it is impoſſible, one would imagine, that the Number or Fertility of the Inhabitants ſhould be any Thing conſiderable; yet what a prodigious Quantity of Muſcles, Crabs, Lobſters, and other Fiſh of an enormous Size; what Piles of Oyſters, whoſe Whiteneſs and Fat give a Keenneſs to the Appetite; what a Profuſion of Turbots, Flounders, Dabs, Burts, Plaice, and all the various Species of flat Fiſh, whoſe Fleſh is ſo exceedingly admired, does it furniſh us with? We obſerve, in the Seaſon, whole Fleets of Ships freighted with Herrings; and at other Times Shoals of Mackarel and Whitings preſent themſelves voluntarily before us upon the Coaſts; inſomuch that whole Provinces are ſupplied with a ſufficient Quantity of them by the bare Capture of a ſingle Day. Legions of Smelts and Flounders forſake the Salt Waters in the Spring, and begin to ſwim up the Rivers. Shads follow the ſame Tract, and grow to their full Perfection in the freſh Water. Salmons continue till *July*, and ſometimes later, to enrich the Fiſhers, though threeſcore, and ſometimes fourſcore Leagues from the Sea. Every Seaſon regales us with freſh Delicacies, without the leaſt Interruption of their uſual Preſents; ſuch as Lampreys, Smelts, Tunnies, Soles, Thornbacks, and a vaſt Variety of other Fiſh that adorn our Diſhes, and gratify the niceſt Taſte. What a Delicacy, what a Profuſion of Proviſions,

viſions do we receive from the Indulgence of this Element!

This very Delicacy, however, might poſſibly ſo enhance their Value, that none but the Rich could purchaſe them; or the Plenty might be ſo great, that the Corruption of the Whole, or the greateſt Part, might prevent their timely Conſumption. But both theſe Inconveniences are effectually prevented by a little Salt. Thus the Sea is laviſh of her Stores, and at the ſame time furniſhes us with that which renders their Communication eaſy, and their Conveyance ſafe. We obſerve likewiſe in this Profuſion of the Sea, a Precaution which enhances the Value of her Gifts, and proves an additional Bleſſing. Such Fiſh as are wholeſome Food and agreeable to the Taſte, are exceedingly prolifick; but thoſe, on the other Hand, whoſe Fleſh is unpalatable, or prejudicial to our Health, and whoſe monſtrous Size renders them formidable to others, for the Generality bring forth their Young completely formed into the World, and ſeldom more than one or two at a Birth. The ſame Wiſdom that has regulated with ſuch Indulgence the Bounds of their Fecundity, keeps thoſe at a wide Diſtance from our Shores, which we have the leaſt Occaſion for, and puts others into our Poſſeſſion, which are of moſt Benefit and Advantage to us. Some Species are with us all the Year long, and others pay us an annual Viſit in prodigious Multitudes. The exact Time of their Paſſage, and their

their peculiar Track, is well known, which are very advantageous Circumſtances, though ſometimes it may vary 10 or 15 Days, by means of ſtrong Winds or bad Weather. We may form an adequate Idea of other Fiſh of Paſſage from the Herrings and Cods. The former ſeem to have their principal Rendezvous between the Points of *Scotland*, *Norway*, and *Denmark*. From thence the *Daniſh* Colonies take their annual Progreſs, and, at different Seaſons, croſs the Channel. Their Voyage is performed with the utmoſt Exactneſs: Their Track is preſcribed, and their March regulated. The whole Body move at once; not one of them preſumes to ſtruggle, pillage, or deſert. When the Body of their Army is once paſſed, not one of the ſame Species appears again till the Year enſuing. An infinite Number of Worms and little Fiſh are bred every Summer in the Channel, with which the Herrings regale themſelves. They are a Sort of Manna, which theſe Animals never fail of picking up; and when they have cleared the Seas in the Northern Parts of *Europe*, they deſcend towards the South, to which they are attracted by the pleaſing Proſpect of a new Stock of Proviſions.

We have but very few Cod-fiſh in our Seas. Their general Rendezvous is at the immenſe Bank before *Newfoundland*. There they are ſo numerous, that the Fiſhermen, who reſort thither from all Parts, are conſtantly employ'd, and find their Labours attended with ſurprizing

ing Succeſs. One Man ſhall ſometimes catch three or four hundred in a Day. When the Suſtenance that attracts them is exhauſted in theſe Parts, they diſperſe, and proclaim open War with the Whitings, which are their favourite Aliment. The latter fly before them; and their frequent Returns upon our Coaſts are principally owing to this hoſtile Chace.

As to thoſe ſeveral Species of Fiſh which are the conſtant Inhabitants of our Rivers, being to treat of them diſtinctly in the Body of this Book, I ſhall not prevent myſelf by ſpeaking of them here. However, I cannot help giving the Reader, for his Amuſement, the following beautiful Lines of Mr. *Pope*, in which he has not only given a charming Deſcription of Angling, but characteriſed five of our principal Sorts of Fiſh.

In genial Spring, beneath the quiv'ring Shade,
Where cooling Vapours breathe along the Mead,
The patient Fiſher takes his ſilent Stand,
Intent, his Angle trembling in his Hand;
With Looks unmov'd, he hopes the ſcaly Breed,
And eyes the dancing Cork, and bending Reed.
Our plenteous Streams a various Race ſupply:
The bright-ey'd Perch, *with Fins of* Tyrian *Dye;*
The ſilver Eel, *in ſhining Volumes roll'd;*
The yellow Carp, *in Scales bedrop'd with Gold;*
Swift Trouts *diverſify'd with crimſon Stains,*
And Pikes, *the Tyrants of the watry Plains.*

Having

Having mentioned the Wars of the Cods and Whitings, I must take Notice of one Circumstance, which reigns thro' all the Species of Fish. The Muscle lies in Ambuscade within the Mud; there she opens her Shells, and when a small unwary Crab presumes to creep in, she claps them close together in an Instant, and secures her Prey. The Oyster takes the same Measures to ensnare such little Fish as are not on their Guard. The Sole, and most Flat-fish lie conceal'd likewise in the Soil, to the Colour whereof their Backs bear a near Resemblance, and observe, with the utmost Circumspection, where the Females of large Fish sink commodious Lodgments for their Spawn, whereon the Males afterwards diffuse their impregnating Fluid, to render such Spawn prolific. The Sole springs instantaneously from her Ambuscade, and regales herself with this delicious Food, which pampers her up, and gives her an exquisite Flavour. The small Soles, in their Turn, are equally an agreeable Collation to the large Crabs; and when we open one of these latter, we seldom fail of finding a Sole or two in the Belly of it. You may form an Idea of the other Species by this. All the several Classes of living Creatures that breed in the Water, from the biggest to the least, are constantly in Action, and at War with each other. 'Tis one continued Series of Artifices, Flights, Evasions, and open Violence. They pillage and devour one another, without Remorse or Moderation.

But

But if the Inhabitants of the watry Regions have ſuch a watchful Eye upon the ſcattered Spawn, and are thus addicted to devour one another, this Element, one would think, muſt, in proceſs of Time, ceaſe to be repleniſhed; for ſince the leſſer Fiſh are the proper Suſtenance of the larger, the former muſt of Courſe be all deſtroyed; and the latter, in their Turn, periſh for want of Subſiſtence. The Almighty, however, has taken proper Meaſures for the Preſervation of Fiſh, by giving Strength to ſome, Activity and Circumſpection to others; and by a Multiplication of them to ſuch a prodigious Degree, that their Fecundity exceeds their natural Inclination to prey upon each other. Be the Number of Cods ever ſo great, that have been caught this Year, or devour'd in the Sea by the Invaſion of their Enemies, there is ſtill a Remainder of that Tribe, which is more than ſufficient to furniſh us with as large a Quantity about two Years hence. The Fact is demonſtrable by the following Inſtance. A fine freſh Cod being produced before Mr. *Leuwenhoeck*, he had the Curioſity to count her Eggs, for which Purpoſe he took as many as weighed a Dram, and told them over. After this he weighed the whole Maſs of Eggs, which, allowing eight Times the Number to every Ounce, amounted to no leſs than nine Millions, three hundred forty-four thouſand Eggs.

As incredible as this Account may ſeem to be at firſt View, the Quantity of Eggs ſo frequently

quently found in a common Carp, tho' far ſhort of the Number contain'd in a large Cod, is ſo ſurpriſing, that we may be fully ſatisfied Mr. *Leuwenhoeck*'s Calculation is juſt. When we come to ſearch into the wiſe End of this amazing Fertility, we are immediately convinced, that it is not to repleniſh either the Rivers, or the Sea, with the ſame Quantity of Fiſh as there are Eggs: For were it ſo, the Ocean itſelf would ſcarce be able to contain them. 'Tis manifeſt, however, that that there is a double Intention in this Fecundity; in the firſt Place, to preſerve the Species, whatever Accidents may happen; and in the next, to furniſh the ſurviving Fiſh with a plentiful and ſucculent Subſiſtence.

Thus we perceive, in ſome meaſure, the Manner in which the Fiſh are nouriſhed and preſerved. There are ſuch an infinite Number of Weeds, Worms, Shell-fiſh, Eggs, Roes, and minute Fiſh lodged within the Waters, that we need be in no Manner of Concern for the Inhabitants, with reſpect to their Proviſions. They have, we perceive, their certain Allowance.—But then their Aliment lies conceal'd, or flies before them; and we can diſcern nothing in theſe Fiſh but a Head, a large inactive Body, and a Tail. As they have ſo few Organs, we naturally aſk, how are they capable of advancing, ſwimming, and ſeizing on their Prey? To ſolve this we muſt conſider, that the Form, or Figure, of all Fiſh in general being ſtrait,

an-

and growing always ſomewhat taper at the Head, enables them to traverſe the Water. The Tail, by the Aſſiſtance of the Muſcles, is exceedingly pliant, ſtrong, and active; inclines to the Right and Left, and, when reduced to a direct Line, repels the Water that lies behind it: Immediately it reſumes its playing, and, by this alternate Motion, advances the Head, and in ſhort the whole Body, in a much more agreeable Manner than an Oar, work'd alternately to and fro at the Stern of a Boat, conveys it up a River. The Fins, which lie under the Fiſh's Belly, are ſometimes of ſingular Service; not only in repelling the Water, and advancing the Body; but in ſtopping its Courſe, when they are extended, and lie at reſt. Their peculiar Office, however, is to direct the Movement of the Body, by keeping it in an equal Poiſe; ſo that in Caſe the Fiſh ſhould only move the Fins on its right Side, and bring thoſe on its Left cloſe to its Body, all the Motion is in an Inſtant determined to that Side: Juſt as a Boat, that has two Oars, when but one is made uſe of, will infallibly turn to that Side whereto it is impell'd by the Working of the other. If you cut off a Fiſh's Fins, the Back, which is heavier than the Belly, being no longer in an Equilibrium, will either lie aſlant, or be turned directly up; as is the Caſe with dead Fiſh, whoſe Fins lie always on the Surface of the Water.

It is eaſy to conceive, from what has been ſaid, how a Fiſh is capable of advancing in a direct Line: But the Difficulty that remains, is, how they do to riſe and fall in the Water. Now moſt Fiſh, it muſt be obſerved, have a Bladder, or ſomething equivalent to it, the Uſe of which is quite different from what moſt People imagine. This ſuppoſed Bladder is a Bag of Air, by Virtue of which the Fiſh are enabled, according to its Enlargement or Contraction, to riſe or ſink.

Nothing is more eaſy to be conceived than this, if we lay down as inconteſtable Maxims, equally conſiſtent with Experience and good Senſe, 1. That a Body will ſwim upon the Water when 'tis lighter than that Quantity of the Fluid whoſe Place it fills. 2. That a Body is more ponderous, according as the Parts of it are more compact, and contain in them a leſſer Quantity of Air; and lighter, according as they are porous, and contain in them a larger Quantity of Air.

Theſe Poſitions allowed, the Body of a Fiſh, which is heavier than the Maſs of Water whoſe Place it poſſeſſes, would unavoidably ſink to the Bottom, had not the Fiſh in its Inteſtines a Veſſel, or Bag, fill'd with Air, which renders him capable of ſuſtaining himſelf in what particular Part of the Water he ſees moſt convenient for his Purpoſe. This Bag dilates the Fiſh, in ſome Meaſure, and makes ſome ſmall Improvement to its natural Bulk, without any Addition to its Weight.

By this Means he poſſeſſes a larger Space than he would do without it, and this brings him to an equal Poiſe with that Body of Water whoſe Place he fills. Let us ſuppoſe the Fiſh, without his Bag, to weigh ſixteen Ounces, and the Water, whoſe Place he occupies, to weigh fifteen only, the Fiſh muſt unavoidably deſcend. If, however, you afterwards ſupply the Fiſh with a ſmall Bag of Air, which adds nothing to his Weight, but enlarges his Dimenſions, ſo that the Maſs of Water, whoſe Place he fills, weighs ſixteen Ounces; the Fiſh will then be in an equal Poiſe with that Maſs, and be ſupported in any Part of the River.

Now ſuppoſing the Fiſh to extend his Bag, he muſt enlarge the Dimenſions of his Body, without the Addition of any Weight: And if he becomes lighter, he muſt conſequently riſe. On the contrary, ſhould the Fiſh contract his Bag, he will decreaſe in his Dimenſions, without any Diminution of his Weight; whereby he muſt become heavier than the Water whoſe Place he occupies, and unavoidably muſt ſink. How improbable ſoever this Diſtention and Contraction may ſeem, they have been evinced by inconteſtable Demonſtrations. This Bag of his, for the generality, has two ſmall, but diſtinct Partitions: One, which is always equally full of Air, in order to keep the Fiſh in an equal Poiſe with the Maſs of Water whoſe Place he fills: The other is dilated or contracted, to enable the Fiſh to become lighter

er or heavier, or, in other Terms, to riſe or ſink, as Occaſion requires.

The Water abounds with Particles of Air, diffus'd through the Whole. What we generally call the Gills of a Fiſh, are a Sort of Lungs, which he opens for the Admiſſion of Air, and which are formed with ſuch a peculiar Mechaniſm, that they receive it without the leaſt Intermixture of any Water. The Air indiſputably flows into the Bag through them, and by Virtue thereof the Fiſh aſcends: But when he is inclined to ſink, he has nothing more to do than to contract his Bag; for the Air immediately re-aſcends to the Gills, and has a free and uninterrupted Paſſage. The Fiſh thereupon ſinks to the Bottom, and the Rapidity of his Deſcent is proportioned to the Quantity of Air that is ejected.

Every Kind of Fiſh has its Jaws framed for the taking in and macerating its particular Sort of Food. Such as feed upon Weeds and Inſects, have ſeldom any Teeth; but ſuch as prey upon other Fiſh, have one, two, or more Rows of Teeth, for the better grinding of their Nouriſhment; in which, as in all other Things, the Wiſdom of Providence is manifeſt. The Back-bones of Fiſh, for the more eaſy bending of their Bodies, conſiſt of very ſhort Vertebræ, ſo joined, that their Tail and Head may be eaſily brought together; and their Scales, which in many Species are amazingly beautiful, are ſo regularly placed in Rows one over another, that they never ob-

ſtruct their Motion. Some Kinds indeed have no Scales, which uſually generate by Copulation, and bring forth their Young alive, and perfectly formed.

Beſides the Arms of Defence which Nature has given ſome Fiſh, they have generally a remarkable Cunning in forming their Neſts, for the Preſervation of their Young. Of this there is no Inſtance more wonderful than the Tickle-back, one of the ſmalleſt of Fiſh. It is compoſed of little Fibres of Roots, ſo placed together, as to leave a hollow Tube in the Middle, for the repoſiting of the Spawn.

As to the Power of Senſation, Fiſh ſeem to enjoy it as perfectly as any other Sort of Animals. Their Sight, Taſte, and Smelling, indeed, are not diſputed; but many, who pretend to be curious Obſervers, deny them the Senſe of Hearing. This, however, is an Error, as appears from Experiment: For if you uſe to feed Fiſh in a Pond at any particular Place, and practiſe them to ſome certain Call, they may be brought to come together at that Call, tho' you keep ever ſo much out of Sight. But this is the more likely to ſucceed, if you begin the Experiment when they are very young. Whence the contrary Opinion had its Riſe I cannot determine; but the *Romans* were wiſer in the Time of *Domitian* than to entertain it, as appears from this Epigram of *Martial* up on the Fiſh-ponds of that Emperor.

Raſh

Raſh Angler, here thy guilty Sport forbear,
Theſe finny Natives are a Monarch's Care.
The gentle Kind obey his known Command,
And feed familiar from his ſporting Hand:
Each has his Name, which ſev'rally they hear,
And to their Owner's Summons ſtrait appear.

In fine, the Share of Life which ſome Fiſh poſſeſs, is worthy the Notice of every curious Angler. The Eel being cut in pieces, maintains Life and Motion for ſeveral Hours. A Carp will move vigorouſly ſome time after the Inteſtines are taken out of its Body: And even what is ſaid of the Herring, that it never ſtirs when out of the Water, has been found on Trial to be ſometimes falſe. But I ſhall ſay more on ſeveral of theſe Heads, in ſpeaking of each particular Species of Fiſh, and therefore will conclude this Introduction; which I hope has afforded the Reader ſome Profit as well as Delight, after turning his Thoughts to ſome other Topicks of Meditation, as they are enumerated by *J. Davors*, Eſq; an old *Engliſh* Poet, whoſe Verſes are preſerved by Mr. *Walton*.

Let me live harmleſly, and near the Brink
Of Trent *or* Avon *have a Dwelling-Place;*
Where I may ſee my Quill *or* Cork *down ſink,*
With eager Bite of Perch, *or* Bleak, *or* Dace;
And on the World and my Creator think:
Whilſt ſome Men ſtrive ill-gotten Goods t'embrace;

And others ſpend their Time in baſe Exceſs
Of Wine, *or worſe, in* War *and* Wantonneſs.

Let them that liſt theſe Paſtimes ſtill purſue,
And on ſuch pleaſing Fancies feed their Fill,
So I the Fields *and* Meadows *green may view,*
And daily by freſh Rivers *walk at will,*
Among the Daiſies *and the* Violets *blue,*
Red Hiacynth, *and yellow* Daffodil,
Purple Narciſſus *like the Morning Rays,*
Pale Gandergraſs, *and azure* Culverkeys.

I count it higher Pleaſure to behold
The ſtately Compaſs of the lofty Sky,
And in the midſt thereof (like burning Gold)
The flaming Chariot of the World's great Eye,
The watry Clouds that in the Air uproll'd,
With ſundry Kinds of painted Colours fly;
And fair Aurora *lifting up her Head,*
Still bluſhing, riſe from old Tithonus' *Bed.*

The Hills *and* Mountains *raiſed from the* Plains,
The Plains *extended level with the* Ground,
The Ground divided into ſundry Veins,
The Veins inclos'd with Rivers *running round;*
Theſe Rivers making Way thro' Nature's Chains,
With headlong Courſe into the Sea *profound;*
The raging Sea, beneath the Vallies low,
Where Lakes, *and* Rills, *and* Rivulets *do flow.*

The

The lofty Woods, the Foreſts wide and long,
Adorn'd with Leaves and Branches freſh and green,
In whoſe cool Bow'rs the Birds with many a Song,
Do welcome with their Choir the Summer's Queen:
The Meadows fair, where Flora's *Gifts among*
Are intermixt, with verdant Graſs between:
The ſilver-ſcaled Fiſh that ſoftly ſwim
Within the ſweet Brook's chryſtal watry Stream.

All theſe, and many more of his Creation
That made the Heav'ns, the Angler *oft doth ſee;*
Taking therein no little Delectation,
To think how ſtrange, how wonderful they be;
Framing thereof an inward Contemplation,
To ſet his Heart from other Fancies free;
And whilſt he looks on theſe with joyful Eye,
His Mind is rapt above the ſtarry Sky.

THE

Britiſh ANGLER.

PART the FIRST.

Containing the Angler's Apparatus.

CHAP. I.

Of ANGLING-RODS.

HE that would be an Angler, muſt carefully furniſh himſelf with Variety of Rods, Lines, Hooks, Floats, Plummets, Baits according to the Seaſon and the Fiſh he angles for, and ſeveral other Appurtenances, which I ſhall mention in Order.

The

The Time to provide *Joints* for your *Rods* is near the Winter Solſtice, if poſſible between the Middle of *November* and *Chriſtmas*-Day, or at furtheſt between the End of *October* and the Beginning of *January*: The Sap continuing to deſcend till towards *November*, and beginning to riſe again when *January* is over. The Stocks or Buts ſhould be of Ground Hazle, Ground Aſh, or Ground Willow; tho' very good ones are ſometimes made of Juniper, Bay-tree, or Elder-Shoots. Stocks ought not to be above two or three Feet in Length, and every Joint beyond it ſhould grow gradually taper to the End of the Top. Chuſe the Wood that ſhoots directly from the Ground, and not from any Stump, becauſe theſe latter are never ſo exactly ſhaped.

Hazle-tops are preferred to all others; and the next to them are Yew, Crab-tree, or Black-thorn. Some, indeed, uſe the Bambou Cane, and ſay it excels the beſt Hazle. But as the Hazle is freeſt from Knots, and of the fineſt natural Shape, it ſeems fitteſt for the Purpoſe. If they are a little warp'd, you may bring them ſtrait at a Fire; and if they have any Knots or Excreſcences, you muſt take them off with a ſharp Knife: Tho', if poſſible, avoid gathering ſuch as have either of thoſe Defects.

When you have got a Quantity of Joints, bind them in Bundles, in the Middle of which put a ſtrait Pole, to keep them from warping, and let them reſt 15 Months, at leaſt, before

uſed, that the Pith may be all conſumed. If you want them ſooner, place them upright in a Chimney, but not too near the Fire, nor for above 10 Days: Then boil them in a large Copper; ſtraiten and dry them again; and in two or three Months they will be fit for Uſe. In the making up your Rods, obſerve theſe Directions.

For the *Ground Angle*, eſpecially in muddy Waters, the Cane or Reed is preferred for a Stock. It ſhould be 3 Yards and a half long, with a Top of Hazle, conſiſting of one, two, or three Pieces, all of them together two Yards, or one Yard and a half long at leaſt, including the Whalebone. Your Rod will then be in all five Yards and a half or five Yards long, at leaſt. The Stiffneſs of the Cane is helped by the Length and Strength of the Top, the pliant and regular Bending of which preſerves the Line.

Having got an Hazle Top, made of your deſired Length, cut off five or ſix Inches of the ſmall End: Then piece neatly to the remaining Part, a ſmall Piece of round, ſmooth, and taper Whalebone, of five or ſix Inches long, and whip it to the Hazle with ſtrong Silk, well rubbed with the beſt Shoemaker's Wax. At the Top of the Whalebone whip a narrow, but ſtrong Nooſe of Hair, with waxed Silk, to put your Line to.

For the *Fly-Angling*, or Running Line, in a clear Water for Trout, Grayling, or Salmon-Smelt, the Rod ſhould be of ſeveral Pieces of Hazle,

Hazle, and ſix Inches of Whalebone, all ſmooth, round, and taper; and ſo neatly bound together, with fine Wax Thread below, and Silk above, as to make it ply with a true Bent to the Hand.

But the neateſt Rod is thus made: Get a white Deal, or Fir-board, thick, free from Knots and Frets, and ſeven or eight Foot long: Let a dextrous Joiner divide this with a Saw into ſeveral Breadths: Then, with his Planes, let him ſhoot them round, ſmooth, and Ruſh-grown, or taper. One of theſe will be ſeven or eight Foot of the Bottom of the Rod, all in one Piece: Faſten to it an Hazle of ſix or ſeven Foot long, proportioned to the Fir, and alſo Ruſh-grown. This Hazle may conſiſt of two or three Pieces; to the Top of which fix a Piece of Yew, about two Foot long, made round, taper, and ſmooth; and to the Yew a Piece of ſmall, round, and ſmooth Whalebone, five or ſix Inches long. This will be a curious Rod, if artificially worked: But be ſure that the Deal for the Bottom be ſtrong and round.

The Rod for Fly, and Running Worm, in a clear Water, muſt by no means be top-heavy; but very well mounted, and exactly proportionable, as well as ſlender and gentle at top: Otherwiſe it will neither caſt well, ſtrike readily, nor ply and bend equally, which will very much endanger the Line. Let both the Hazle and Yew Tops be free and clear from

from Knots, they will otherwiſe be often in Danger to break.

As the Whiteneſs of the Fir will ſcare away Fiſh, you muſt colour your Stock in this Manner: Warm the Fir at the Fire, when finiſhed by the Joiner; and then, with a Feather dipped in *Aqua Fortis*, ſtroak it over, and with your Hand, chafe it into the Wood, which it will make of a pure Cinnamon Colour.

If you have a Mind to paint your Rod of an Aſh-Colour, obſerve theſe Directions. Make a Size with Glue and Water, boiled together till the Glue is diſſolved, and the Mixture of a Lye-Colour. Strike this over the Wood with a Bruſh or Pencil, while it is hot. When it is quite dry, take White-Lead, Red-Lead, and Lamp-black, in ſuch Quantities as, when ground together with Linſeed-Oil, produce the Colour you deſire. Lay it on thin with a Bruſh, and this will not only ſerve for a Colour itſelf, but for the Ground of any other Colour. To inſtance in the Green: Take Pink and Verdigreece, and grind them together in Linſeed-Oil, as thin as you can, and then lay it ſmoothly on with your Bruſh. Once doing will ſerve after the Ground Colour, which muſt be thoroughly dry.

As to Canes, they may be made of what Hue you pleaſe, by covering them artfully with thin Leather or Parchment, dyed of the Colour you affect.

It is found very uſeful to have Rings or Eyes, made of fine Wire, and placed upon your

your Rod from one End to the other, in ſuch a Manner as that when you lay your Eye to one, you may ſee through all the reſt. Thro' theſe Rings your Line muſt run, which will be kept in a due Poſture by that Means: And you muſt have a Winch, or Wheel, affixed to your Rod, about a Foot above the End, by which you may, if it ſhould be proper, give Liberty to the Fiſh.

Rods for Roch, Dace, Tench, Chub, Bream, and Carp, ſhould not have the Top ſo gentle as thoſe for Fly, but pretty ſtiff, that ſo the Rod may exactly anſwer the Motion of the Hand: For Roch and Dace only nibble, and if you ſtrike not in that very Moment, eſpecially if you fiſh with Paſte or any very tender Bait, you miſs them; and a ſlender Top folds and bends with a ſudden Jerk.

In a Time of Drought, ſteep your Rod in Water a little before you begin to angle. Faſten to the Top of your Rod, or Fin, with Shoemaker's Wax and Silk, a Nooſe or Loop of Hair, not large, but ſtrong and very ſtraight, to fix your Line to.

Your Length of Rod is generally to be governed by the Breadth of the River you angle in; but always uſe a Rod full as long as the River will bear; and if, though you angle in a ſmall River, you conſtantly uſe a Rod five Yards and above long, you will experimentally find Advantages thereby.

Your Top for the Running Line muſt be always gentle, that the Fiſh may the more inſenſibly

ſenſibly run away with the Bait, and not be ſcared with the Stiffneſs of the Tackle.

To preſerve Hazles, whether Stocks or Tops, from Worm-eating or rotting, twice or thrice in a Year, as you think fit, rub them all over with Sallet-Oil, Tallow, or ſweet Butter, chafing it in with your Hand: But above all, keep them dry to prevent their rotting, and not too near the Fire, leſt they grow brittle: And in the Spring, before you begin to angle, ſteep them at leaſt 12 Hours in Water.

That the Reader may remember what has been delivered in this Chapter concerning Rods, I ſhall give him a Summary of it in Verſe: Which Method I ſhall obſerve throughout this whole Book, having myſelf found great Advantage from ſuch Memorandum Verſes.

When now the Sun *to* Capricorn *retreats,*
And rural Hinds ſeek out the artful Heats,
Awhile th' approaching Winter-Blaſts *ſuſtain:*
The future Bliſs will quit the preſent Pain.
Then tender Shoots *from the old* Hazle *take,*
Strait, ſmooth, and even, free from Knot or Break.
Search all the Copp'ce, *nor ſpare the faireſt Tree;*
The loaded Roots you of their Burthen free.
Prune them, if notch'd; *if* crooked, *make them ſtrait:*
The Knife *does this, a gentle* Flame *does that,*
Then

Then let ſome Pole *their fetter'd Bodies bear,*
And long preſerve them with the utmoſt Care.
Nor when you fit *them for your* Sport *and* Uſe,
Slight Rules of Art, *or any Pains refuſe:*
Joint *fix'd on* Joint, *look with attentive Eyes,*
The taper Rod *ſhould in proportion riſe.*

CHAP. II.

Of LINES.

I Come now to the Preparation of Lines, in which the following Rules are to be obſerved. Select not your Hair from lean or diſeaſed Beaſts, much leſs from thoſe that are dead; but from a Stone-horſe, that is fat, ſtrong, and luſty, of four or five Years old, and, if poſſible, at the very Time of his covering a Mare. That which grows from the inmoſt and middle Part of his Dock, and ſo extends downwards to the Ground, is commonly the biggeſt and ſtrongeſt Hair about the Horſe, and better than that upon the upper Part of the Tail. Generally the beſt Horſes have the beſt Hair.

Hair of a Sorrel, Cheſnut, or Brown Colour, are beſt for Ground Angle, eſpecially in muddy Water, they being not only the Colour of the Gravel or Sand, but of the Water itſelf. The white and grey, or duskiſh white Hair, is for clear Rivers and Waters. Your Hair thus ſuited is not diſcernable by the Fiſh, and conſequently will not

not ſcare them from your Bait, if your Lines are but of a juſt and due Thickneſs.

Some uſe the pale watery Green, but not the deep Green, for Weedy Rivers in Summer. A Black may do well for Rivers that immediately flow from Moſſes, and are thereby rendered very black.

It being impoſſible always to have natural Hair of a Colour ſuitable to the Seaſon and Water, ingenious Anglers ſupply this Defect by dying it to their Minds. To make a *Brown*, boil Walnut-Leaves in Chamber-lye; or take Water, and diſſolve ſome Alum in it; or mix ſtrong Ale and Salt: In either of theſe ſoak the Hair well.

The Inner Bark of a Crab-Tree boiled in Water with ſome Alum, makes a pure *Yellow* Colour, which is good when the Weeds rot, for thereby the Line looks like the Weeds.

Another *Yellow* may be made with two Quarts of ſmall Ale, and three Handfuls of Walnut Leaves ſtamped therein. Let the Hair remain till it is as deep as you deſire it.

Tawny Hair is made with Lime and Water mixed together, by ſteeping for the Space of four or five Hours, and then ſoaking it a whole Day in a Tan-pit.

For a *Ruſſet* Colour, take a Pint of ſtrong Lee, half a Pound of Soot, a little Juice of Walnut Leaves, and a Quart of Alum: Put them all together in a Pan, and boil them well, and when the Liquor is cold, ſteep your Hair in it till it is as dark as you deſire.

To

To make Hair *green*, take a Quart of Ale, and put into it a Pound of Alum: Then put in your Hair, and boil all together in a Pan ſoftly for half an Hour: Then take out your Hair, and let it dry.—After this take two Quarts of fair Water, and put in it two Handfuls of Wax, covering the Pan with a Tile, and ſo boil it for half an Hour gently. When the Scum is yellow, put in your Hair, with half a Pound of powder'd Copperas, and let this too boil half an Hour; after which let it ſtand five or ſix Hours, and then take out the Hair and dry it.—This will make a fine Water Green, which you may heighten by adding more Copperas.

Another *Green* is thus made: Take a Pottle of Alum Water, a large Handful of Marigold Leaves, and boil them till a yellow Scum ariſe; then take half a Pound of green Copperas, and as much Verdigreece; beat them to fine Powder, and having put thoſe into the Alum Water, ſet all to cool: Then put in the Hair, and let it remain till it is deep enough coloured, perhaps about 12 Hours; then take it out, and lay it to dry. The longer you permit the Hair to be in it, it will be deeper coloured.

N. B. The Hair you uſe for dying ſhould be the beſt White you can get. And in order to know the Seaſons when theſe Colours are proper, obſerve, that as the Weeds rot away in the Autumnal Months, *September*, *October*, and *November*, the *Yellow* is then beſt. The

Ruſſet

Ruſſet ſerves all the Winter, and till the End of *April*, as well in Rivers as in Pools and Lakes: At the ſame Time the *Brown* ſhould be uſed in blackiſh, and the *Tawny* in heathy and mooriſh Waters. The bright natural Hair is for the Summer Seaſon.

When you get any Hair fit for your Purpoſe, immediately ſteep it 12 Hours in cold Spring Water: Then waſh it very well from Dirt, without ſtraining any of the Hairs; and hang it up to dry 3 or 4 Days in a Kitchen, but not too near the Fire. When perfectly dry, put it in a Bag or Caſe, made of Parchment, or Paper; which lay in a Box, or Deſk placed in an upper Room.

You muſt furniſh yourſelf with an Inſtrument for *twiſting* your Lines: Then cut off near an Handful of the bottom Part of the Hair, which is generally weak, if not rotten. Turn the Top of one Hair to the Tail of another, which will cauſe every Part to be equally ſtrong. When you make Lines, eſpecially 4 or 5 of the lowermoſt Links, Lengths, Gildards, or Toughts, (for they are ſtil'd by all theſe Names in different Places) let them be of the beſt Hairs, ſuch as are of equal Bigneſs, even, round, and clear, and free from Galls, Scabs, and Frets: For one ſuch Hair will prove as ſtrong as 3 uneven ſcabby Hairs, that are ill choſen, and full of Galls, or uneven; the former commonly ſtretching or breaking altogether, which Hairs of an unequal Bigneſs never do, but ſnap ſingly, and betray the Angler

gler that relies on them. You may make the Top of your Line, and indeed all of it, except 2 Yards next the Hook, of a coarſer Hair. Always let the Top of your Line, whether in muddy or clear Waters, be made of white Hair; becauſe the Motion of the Line, when the Fiſh bite, will be far more diſcernible, than if they were either of black or brown Hair.

Never ſtrain your Hairs before they are made into a Line, as ſome do; for then they will ſhrink, when uſed. The ſtrongeſt and beſt are eaſily ſelected by the Eye.

To make the Line handſome, and to twiſt the Hair even and neat, gives it Strength: For if one Hair is long, and another ſhort, the ſhort one receiving no Strength from the long one, conſequently breaks; and then the other, as too weak, breaks alſo. Therefore twiſt them ſlowly, and in twiſting, keep them from entangling, which hinders their right plaiting or bedding together: Twiſt them neither too hard nor too ſlack, but even, ſo as they may twine one with another, and no more. Your Links may be tied to each other with a Fiſher's Knot, or, as ſome call it, a Water-knot, which every Angler knows how to make.

The mixing Hair and Silk is no ways good for Lines: But if your Lines muſt be very ſtrong, make them all of Hair, or all of Silk that is white; becauſe white Silk is ſtrongeſt, and will not rot ſo quickly as the coloured.

Hay-

Having twiſted your Links, lay them in cold Water for one Hour, and then twiſt them over again before you tie them into a Line. Otherwiſe a Hair or two will poſſibly ſhrink and be ſhorter than the reſt, at firſt fiſhing with it; whence ſo much of the Strength of the Line is loſt, for want of firſt watering, and then re-twiſting it.

When you have tied your Lengths together with the *Water-Knot*, cut off the ſhort Ends about the Breadth of a Straw from the Knot, that it may not undo in the uſing.

Do not arm, fix, or whip Hooks to any Line, either for Ground or Fly Angling, that conſiſts of more than three or four Links, at the moſt: But if the Hair be long, and the lowermoſt Link conſiſts of three Hairs, then you may whip to one that conſiſts of two Links only. The Top of the uppermoſt Link having a ſmall Loop, or Water-nooſe, you may fix it to any Line, and as eaſily remove it; there being another Water-nooſe at the Bottom of your Line.

The Line for *Dub-fly*, *Caſt-fly*, or *Artificial-fly*, ſhould be about 3 Yards longer than the Rod, or almoſt twice the Length of it, if the River be not incumbered with Wood or Trees on its Banks: If ſo, let it be ſomewhat ſhorter, but ſtill longer than the Rod; and let the Hair be of a white, or darkiſh white Colour.

To angle for *Trouts*, *Graylings*, and *Salmon Smelts*, with the *Dub-fly*; let the two firſt

ſt Links next the Hook be but of one Hair piece: But the Hair muſt be ſtrong, and of e thick Ends only, and choſen for the Purſe. The next two Links of two Hairs, d next to theſe one of three Hairs; at the op of which have a Water-nooſe, or Loop, put your Line to; which lowermoſt Link nſiſts of three Hairs, and has another Wa-r-nooſe at Bottom, or Hook-link, to fix ur Fly to. Then let two of the next Links your Line be four Hairs, and ſo proceed, increaſing one or two Hairs till you come ſix or ſeven Hairs at the Top. Let the ngle Hairs, or three or four of the next inks, be of a white, or darkiſh white Co-ur.

There are many indeed, who think this ine too ſmall, eſpecially where there are very rge Trouts, and therefore for Caſt-fly An-ling, adviſe two of the firſt Links next the ook to be of two Hairs a-piece, the next a-ove them of three Hairs, to which have a ater-nooſe; then two of three Hairs a-piece, nd then proceed with four, five, ſix, ſeven, nd more, to the topmoſt Link. Others a-ain, and good Anglers too, adviſe the two inks next the Hook to conſiſt of three airs a-piece: Then one Link of four, at the op of which to have a Water-nooſe: Then our, five, ſix, ſeven, eight, and ſo on to the opmoſt Link. And indeed, this Advice is ot amiſs, if the River abounds with large routs, and the Water either be clearing af-

ter

ter Rain, or ſwelled more than uſually. Nay, it will even turn to Account in caſting your Lines, eſpecially the artificial Fly-line, if you make the uppermoſt Link or Gildard to conſiſt of twelve or nine Hairs, with one or two Hairs leſs in the next Link, and ſo abate proportionably in every Link, till you come to the Hook. By this means any young Angler will caſt a Fly well, and quickly become an accurate Artiſt; and if he chances to faſten his Hook, and cannot come to looſen it, he will not loſe above one Link, or two at moſt, though he pull to break it; becauſe the Line is ſo ſtrong at the upper End. You may angle with ſtronger Lines at the Caſt-fly than at Ground, in a clear Water for the Trout. For in a clear Water at Ground for Trouts, Graylings, and Salmon Smelts, never uſe a Line made otherwiſe than with a ſingle Hair at Hook, and ſo on as above directed; only never have above four Hairs in any one Link of the Line.

Your Lines being thus made, the Rod and Line will be in a manner taper, from the very Hand to the Hook, and the Line will fall much better and ſtraiter, and caſt your Fly or Bait to any certain Place your Hand or Eye ſhall direct, with leſs Weight and Violence then otherwiſe, and ſo neither circle the Water, nor fright away the Fiſh.

The *Running Worm Line*, in a clear Water, for Trouts, Graylings, and Salmon Smelts, ſhould be uſually two Yards ſhorter than the Rod,

Rod, altho' an equal Length, and ſometimes even a greater, may in ſome Rivers and Seaſons be more proper: As for Inſtance, the Line longer than the Rod, when the Water is exceeding bright and low, is beſt. For Thickneſs, let the two or three lowermoſt Links be one Hair a-peice, and no Part of it above four or five Hairs in Thickneſs, in any one Link. Let the Hair be of a white, or rather a duſkiſh white Colour.

For the *Running Worm* in muddy Water, the three lowermoſt Links, at leaſt, ſhould be of cheſnut, brown, or ſorrel Colour, and from the Hook upwards, the Thickneſs of the Line may increaſe in the largeſt Proportions.

The Line for *Float Angling* ſhould be of the ſtrongeſt Sort, and as long or rather longer than the Rod for Rivers; but ſhorter than the Rod for Ponds, Pits, Mears, and ſtanding Waters. The Colour of the three or four lowermoſt Links, ſhould be agreeable to the Colour of the Water; that is, a cheſnut, ſorrel, or brown, for a muddy Water; but a dark white, or grey, for clear Rivers.

The *Dibbing Line* ſhould be of the ſame Length and Thickneſs as the Line for Running Worm, in a muddy Water; or it may be a Hair or two thicker, becauſe little of the Line comes into the Water. In this Way of Angling you may expect the biggeſt Fiſh; and wanting Length to give him Line, after he is ſtruck, you muſt be forced to tug for it: Yet ſometimes this Line may be as long as the Rod,

Rod, or near it, if a gentle Wind blow from the Bank you ſtand on.

Many, for the *Ground Angle*, make their Links of three Hairs to conſiſt of two ſorrel, brown, or cheſnut Colour, and one white; or two white, and one cheſnut, ſorrel, or brown Hair; both which do very well.

At the Bottom of every Line have a ſmall Water-nooſe, or Loop, that you may hang on a Hook of any Size, whip'd to a Line, conſiſting of two or three Links; or change your Hook, and two or three of your lowermoſt Links, as often as you pleaſe. If it be a Line of one Hair next the Hook, let the Nooſe be at a Link of three Hairs: If a Line of three Hairs next the Hook, let the Nooſe be at a Link conſiſting of four Hairs.

Let the *Trowling Line* be made of four or ſix Twines of Linnen Yarn, finely ſpun of the beſt Hemp or Flax, and let the Folds be neatly twiſted together. Its Length ſhall be 20 or 30 Yards, with three Yards, next the Hook of ſtrong white Silk neatly made. Some uſe green or ſky-colour'd Silk, and others make the Trowling Line all of Silk, either green or sky-colour'd.

The *Barbel* and *Chub Lines* muſt be very ſtrong, ſeven Hairs at leaſt next the Hook, and twelve at the Top of the Line. Some uſe a Line of white, others of green or sky-colour'd Silk. Others again uſe *Indian* Graſs next to the Look, which ſhould be choſen round and full, without Flaw or Blemiſh.

I

I have been thus particular in my Directions concerning Lines, becauſe it is a Matter of the utmoſt Conſequence to an Angler, and what is ſeldom ſufficiently underſtood. Not that I think it neceſſary to be ſo very exact as ſome are, who preſcribe a certain Number of Hairs for every Species of Fiſh, as if either a Hair more or leſs would ruin the Sport: (For the ſmall *Roach*, the *Bleak*, the *Gudgeon*, or the *Ruff*, they order one Hair only; for *Dace*, or large *Roach*, three Hairs; for *Perch*, *Flounder*, or *ſmall Bream*, four Hairs; for ſmall *Chub*, *Carp*, *Tench*, or *Eel*, ſix Hairs; for *Barbel*, *large Trout*, and *large Bream*, nine Hairs; for *Salmon*, twelve or fifteen Hairs:) I would only have him to act with ſuch Regard to theſe Proportions as the Seaſon, the Place, and his own Judgment may direct, which after a little Experience he will find no Difficulty in doing. The following Verſes contain only the principal Rules, which ought never to be forgot.

Chuſe well your Hair, *and know the vig'rous Horſe*
Not only reigns in Beauty, but in Force.
Reject the Hair of Beaſts, ev'n newly, dead,
Where all the Springs of Nature are decay'd.
But when the rampant Brute *with Vigour flies,*
To force the tim'rous Mare to genial Joys,
Obtain your Wiſh, and glory in the Prize.

Then for your single Links *the faireſt chuſe;*
(Such ſingle Hairs will beſt ſupply your Uſe)
And of the Reſt your ſev'ral Lines *prepare,*
In all ſtill leſſ'ning ev'ry Link a Hair.
If for the Fly, *be long and ſlight your Line;*
The Fiſh is quick, and hates what is not fine:
If for the Deep, *to ſtronger we adviſe;*
Tho' ſtill the Fineſt takes the Fineſt Prize.
Before you twiſt your upper Links, take care,
Wiſely to match in Length *and* Strength *your Hair.*
Twiſt ſlow your Links, and ſee they plait with Eaſe
Hair *beſt with* Hair, *and* Silk *with* Silk *a grees;*
But mix'd, have both great Inconveniencies.

CHAP. III.

Of Hooks, Floats, Plummets, Landing-Lines and Landing Nets, with other Utenſils.

THE *Wire* of *Hooks* ſhould be ſmall, and ſo well tempered as not to ſtretch: The Points ſo hard, as not to be eaſily blunted in the Water. I know not whether it may be worth while to give Directions for making them, ſince very good ones of all Sorts may be purchaſed at a moderate Price. However, as this Book may come into the Hands of ſome who have not always the Conveniency of ſending for them to Town, and of

of others who may out of Choice wiſh to amuſe them in preparing all their own Tackle, I will juſt obſerve, that in order to make a good Hook, there are requiſite a *Hammer*, a *Knife*, a Pair of *Pincers*, an Iron *Semi-cleam*, a *File*, a *Wreſt*, a *Bender*, *Tongs* both long and ſhort, an *Anvil*, and Steel *Needles* of different Sizes.

Heat a Needle of the Size you want in a Charcoal Fire, and raiſe the Beard with your Knife, and then let it cool. Sharpen the Point either with a File, or on a Grind-ſtone; and then put it into the Fire again, and bend it into what Shape you pleaſe: Make the upper Part of the Shank four-ſquare, and file the Edges ſmooth: Then put it into the Fire a third Time, and give it a gentle red Heat; whence taking it out ſuddenly, and plunging it into Water, your Operation is finiſhed.

The Directions which follow are equally uſeful, whether you buy your Hooks or make them yourſelf.

Let the *Hooks* be long in the Shank, and of a Compaſs inclining to Roundneſs; but the Point muſt ſtand even and ſtrait, and the Bending muſt be in the Shank: For if the Shank be ſtrait, the Point will hang outward; and tho', when ſet on it, may ſtand right; yet after the taking of a few Fiſh, it will cauſe the Hair at the End of the Shank to ſtand bent, and conſequently the Point of the Hook to hang directly upwards.

Whether you angle at Top or at Bottom, proportion your Hooks for Strength and Compaſs to the Number of Hairs you angle with next your Hook; and uſe not a ſmall Hook to great Baits, nor a great Hook to ſmall Baits. *Barbels* and *Chubs* muſt have large Hooks; but *Pearches*, *Carps*, *Tenches*, *Breams*, and *Eels*, Hooks of a conſiderably leſs Size. *Trouts* in clear Waters, and *Graylings*, *Salmon Smelts*, *Roaches*, *Dace*, *Ruffs*, and *Gudgeons*, muſt be angled for with ſmall Hooks: And tho' many uſe great Hooks for *Trouts*, in muddy Waters eſpecially, yet it is not ſo ſure a Way as to angle with ſmall ones; and Experience will convince one of its Inconveniencies. The great *Salmon*, however, muſt have a large and ſtrong Hook.

When you ſet on your Hook (which is called by the ſeveral Terms of *arming*, *fixing*, or *whipping*) do it with ſmall but ſtrong Silk, well rubbed with Shoemakers Wax. If for a ſmall Hook, uſe the Silk ſingle; if for a large one, double and twiſt it. Lay your Hair or Graſs on the Inſide of the Hook; for, if it comes on the Outſide, the Silk will be apt to cut and fret it aſunder; and it is not ſo convenient to ſtrike Fiſh: And to avoid the fretting of the Hair by the Hook on the Inſide, ſmooth all the Shank on a Whetſtone. From a Straw's breadth below the Top of the Hook, wrap the Silk about the bare Shank, until you come to the Top of it: Then lay your Line on the Inſide, and whip with your Silk downwards, till

till you come almoſt to the Bent of the Hook, and then faſten it by turning over three or four Times, and drawing it cloſe; which done, cut off the End of the Gildard or Link as nigh as you can to the Twiſt.

Tho' perhaps the Colour of the Silk you whip with is not very material, yet it may not be amiſs when you angle with Worms, to uſe red Silk; but for Paſte, Cod-bait, and other whitiſh Baits, to uſe white. Some do it with a white or red coloured Hair, and ſome with Flax or Hemp: But ſtrong and ſmall Silk is undoubtedly the beſt.

How to arm a briſtled Hook we ſhall ſee hereafter, when we diſcourſe of Cod-baits. And as to Hooks for the Dub-fly, they generally ſhould be ſmall, and the ſame for Cod-bait; but larger for Worms, tho' not ſo large as ſome practiſe, eſpecially in clear Water.

Floats for rapid Rivers ſhould be of Cork; Quills not being able to bear up againſt ſtrong Streams; but then they are beſt for Pits, Ponds, Mears, and ſtanding Waters, and angling near the Top in very ſlow Rivers, eſpecially with Paſtes or tender Baits.

Having procured a Piece of the beſt Cork you can, without Flaws or Holes, bore it through with a ſmall hot Iron; then put into it a Quill of a proper Proportion, neither ſo large to ſplit it, nor ſo ſmall to ſlip out, but ſuch as may ſtick in very cloſely: Then, either with a ſharp Pen-knife or a Razor, pare the Cork into the Form of a Pyramid, ſmall Pear,

Egg, or Nutmeg, making it of what Bigneſs you pleaſe: Then, upon a ſmall Grind-ſtone, or with a Pumice-Sone, ſmooth and make it complete; for you cannot pare it ſo ſmooth as you may rub or grind it. Have always Floats of every Size, from a Pea to a large Walnut, which you may ſuit to the Water, the Size of your Line, or the Fiſh you angle for.

Some adviſe the Boring of a Cork after it is ſhaped; but I think it much ſafer to do it before, both becauſe the Cork will be then leſs apt to ſplit, and becauſe it may be better proportioned to the central Hole. After it is ſhaped, cut the Quill off even with the Cork at each End, and thro' the Quill draw the Line, faſtening them both together with a Wedge of the uppermoſt hard End of the Gooſe Quill, the Feather being ſtripped off. A very *nice Angler*, indeed, may do with *Quills* only, in almoſt all Waters, dying the *Caps* at the *Top*, with *Red*, *Green*, &c. Place the ſmaller End of the Cork towards the Hook, and the bigger towards the Rod, that the ſmaller End ſinking down with the Hook, the bigger may float aloft, and bear the Wedge directly erect; which, when pulled under the Surface of the Water, is the certain Signal of the Fiſh's biting, unleſs by Accident the Hook or Line become entangled, or ſtopped by ſome Stone, Piece of Wood, or Weeds.

Cork

Cork in the Form of a Nutmeg or Egg, being biggeſt in the Middle, and ſmall at each End, is a little apter to ſink, and will not carry ſo weighty a Plummet of Lead: Yet on clear Bottoms, and angling with the Bait ſome Diſtance from the Ground, and in ſlow running Rivers, it will do very well, and better than others.

Furniſh yourſelf with Corks and Quills of all Sizes, and let the Cork be ſo poized with Lead, on the Line, that the Quill which is in it, being about two Inches long, will ſwim upright, and that the leaſt Bite or Nibble will ſink the Cork.

When a Float is ſplit or bruiſed, there is no Remedy for the Miſchance but getting a new one; only you may ſave the Wooden Plug with the Braſs Wire at the End of it, and it will ſerve for another. But if the Water get in at the Top of your Float, that Defect may be amended with a little Sealing-wax. If the Plug of your Float be looſe, pull it out, or if it come out itſelf, in either of theſe Caſes, faſten it in with one of the following Cements.

Take *Bees Wax* bruiſed ſmall, *Chalk* ſcraped fine, and *black Roſin* powdered, of each an equal Quantity: Melt them in a Spoon, or any ſmall Tin Veſſel, and ſee they are well mixed.

Or, Take *Brick-duſt* ſifted very fine, and common *Roſin* pulveriſed: Put one Part of

Brick-duſt to two Parts of *Roſin*, and melt them as before directed. Dip your Plug in either of theſe, and put your Float immediately upon it, becauſe the Cement cools in an Inſtant.

When you join two Floats together, let the Plug be a little thicker in the Middle than at the Ends, which Ends are to go into the Mouths of the Quills. Dip one End in the Cement, and put one Quill upon it; then do the like by the other, and you have a double Float.—Or you make it by dipping the Ends of both Quills, when prepared, in the Cement, and fixing them together, which, when the Cement is cold, will be very ſtrong.

To dye Quills red, which for ſtill Waters are better than any other Floats, take what Quantity you pleaſe of *Urine*, and put in it as much Powder of *Brazil Wood* as will make it redden a Piece of white Paper: Then take ſome fair Water, in which put a Handful of *Salt*, and a little *Argol*, and ſtir them till diſſolved; then boil them well in a Sauce-pan. When the Water is cold, ſcrape your Quills, and let them lie a little in it: Then ſteep them in the redden'd Urine for ten or twelve Days, and having dried them, rub them with a Linnen Cloth.

For *Leading of Lines*, the ſmall round Pellet or Lead-ſhot is beſt, eſpecially for ſtony Rivers, and the Running Line. Let it be cloven, and neatly cloſed about your Line.

Put

Put not above two Plumbs on the Line at once, an Inch and half, or two Inches diſtant from one another, and the lowermoſt about ſeven or eight Inches diſtant from the Hook, for a Running Line, but nine or ten Inches off the Hook for a Float Line. But if the River run on a ſandy Bottom, and be full of Weeds, with few Stones, Leaden Plumbs in the Shape of a Barley Corn, or of an oval Form, are beſt, the Ends being ſmooth and cloſe laid down, either for a muddy Water or Float Angling. Many, when they angle amongſt Weeds, place their Lead on the Shank of the Hook, and believe it then not ſo apt to entangle.

When you angle with the Running Line, let the Line have more Lead in a troubleſome rough Water than in a Stream that is calmer and quieter; as near as may be, ſo much as will ſink the Bait to the Bottom, and permit it to be kept in Motion, by continually rolling on the Ground, and no more. This Rule is to be obſerved in Float Angling in Rivers. Some cover the Lead on their Lines with Shoe-maker's Wax, as thin as may be.

As the Day advances, your Pellet or Plumb may be leſſer; for that will ſometimes carry readily at five o'Clock in the Morning at Running Line, which will ſink and faſten the Line at nine o'Clock; becauſe in Droughts Rivers generally abate, as the Heat increaſes.

When you angle in a very ſtony River that is clear, with the Running Line, the Stones are apt to rub the Pellets bright, which ſcares away the Fiſh: When it does ſo, remove the bright Lead, and put on other that is black.

For a *Lead Plummet*, make a Hole in a Piſtol Bullet, and put therein a ſtrong twiſted Thread; and, when Occaſion is, hang this on the Hook, to try the Depth of the River, or Pond, eſpecially when you angle with the Float, and the Bait is to be near the Bottom, or but juſt touch it.

Prudent Anglers procure a little *Whetſtone*, about two Inches long, and one Quarter of an Inch ſquare, which is far better to ſharpen Hooks on than a File, tho' never ſo fine or good: For the File either will not touch a well-temper'd Hook, or leave it rough, but not ſharp.

Tho' the Angler is not confined to any particular Form for his *Line Caſes*, yet the following is thought as convenient as any. Get a Caſe made of red Leather, with twelve or fourteen Partitions therein, made of the fineſt thin Parchment, and a Flap to cover over the Edges, to prevent the loſing any Thing out of them. In the ſeveral Partitions keep Hooks ready whipt to Lines of two or three Gildards in Length, and ready leaded: Likewiſe, ſpare Links, Lines of all Lengths or Sorts, Silk of all Sorts and Colours, and ſingle ſtrong Hairs. Theſe Caſes lie in a ſmall Room in the Pocket,

Pocket, and yet in one of them you may put all your Tackle ready fixed for the Running Line in a muddy or a clear Water; in another, all the Tackling for Ground Angling with the Float; in another, which muſt be large, the angling Tackle for great Fiſh, as Chub, Barbel, great Salmon; in another, your angling Tackle for Pike, which muſt likewiſe be very large: So that when you travel from Home, you may angle any where for moſt Sorts of Fiſh at Ground, if you carry with you but a good Rod made of Hazle, and the Pieces put into each other, which will ſerve you alſo for a Walking-ſtaff.

Provide *Bags* of Linnen and Woollen, to keep and carry all Sorts of Baits in; alſo a Piece of Cane, with Holes bored therein, to keep Caterpillars, Palmers, Woolbeds, natural Flies, Bobs, or any Sort of Inſects; a Horn for Gentles; Boxes of divers Sizes, to carry Hooks, Silk, Lead, Thread, Corks, Quills, Shoemaker's Wax, and Dub-flies in: Alſo have a neat and ſharp Pen-knife. The following is eſteemed the beſt way to carry and keep Cod-baits, Caterpillars, Clap-baits, natural Flies, and Oak-worm; becauſe to give Cod-baits Water is ſoon to rot them. Cut a round Bough of fine green bark'd Withy, or Willow, about half the Thickneſs of one's Arm, and taking the Bark clear of, about a Foot in length, turn both Ends together from the Middle, and let the Sides fold within each other; then tie it with a String on the

the Top, and ſtop it with a Cork or Piece of Wood: In this put your Baits, and at Night lay it in the Graſs, where let it lie till you have occaſion for them. The Dew preſerves them, and makes them ſcour and thrive; and the Moiſture of the Bark contributes much to their Preſervation; yet it is convenient to bore ſmall Holes in it for their better Perſpiration, tho' the Bark of itſelf be very porous.

It is proper to carry a light *Pannier* or Basket, made on Purpoſe for the Uſe, and neatly worked.

Have always ready a ſmall long *Pole*, with a Loop at the End, like a Water-nooſe, to which faſten a ſmall *Net* to land great Fiſh, without which you will be in Danger of loſing them: But if you angle for Pike, Barbel, Chevin, or great Salmons, get a large Hook called a *Landing Hook*, with a Screw at the End to fix into a Socket at the End of your Pole, in order to ſtrike into the Mouth or any Part of the Fiſh, and ſo draw them to Land. You may alſo fit to the ſame Socket and Pole two other Hooks, one ſharp to cut Weeds away, the other to pull out Wood.

Not to be tedious on this Head, I will ſum up the Angler's Materials in a few Lines, which the young Sportſman may always have in his Memory.

Hooks,

Hooks, Plummets, Floats, *and* Penknife *you must get*,
Bags, Panniers, Landing-Hook, *and* Landing Net;
Your Whetſtone, Line-Caſe, Boxes, Gentle-Horn,
Links, Hairs, *and* Thread, *and* Silk *that may adorn*,
All ready over-night, leſt you forget at Morn.

CHAP. IV.

Of natural Baits; particularly of Earth-worms, Caterpillars, Grubs, Cadews, and Gentles.

THE firſt Obſervation I ſhall make upon *natural Baits*, is that *Earth-worms* are good for all Sorts of Fiſh, and that they and *Gentles* continue in Seaſon the whole Year. The *Earth-bob* is in Seaſon from the Beginning of *November* till almoſt *May-Day*; and the *Cow turd-bob*, or *Clap-bait*, from *May-Day* till *Michaelmas*. *Flies*, *Palmers*, or *Wool-beds*, *Caterpillars*, *Cod-baits*, and *Worms* bred on Herbs, Plants, or Trees, continue good all the Summer. When one Sort of Bait comes in Seaſon, you ought not however to think the preceding altogether uſeleſs; therefore when you angle at Ground in clear Water, have both *Earth-worms*, *Cod-bait*, *Gentles*, and *Bobs* in Readineſs with you, and in more Likelihood Succeſs will attend your Labours. But

if

if you angle for Trouts in a muddy Water with Running Line, you need only take *Brandlings*, *Gilt-tails*, *Tag-tails*, and *Meadow-worms* with you. If the three laſt are not to be eaſily got, then *Brandlings* only: And you may have ſome ſcoured in Moſs and Water only; others, as will be directed, with Ruddle, and others with Grave Earth: For ſometimes the Trout takes the Worm kept one Way, and ſometimes the other; and that all on the ſame Day, and in two Hours Space.

I now come to the ſeveral Species of *Worms*, of which there are divers Sorts: Some bred in the Earth, and therefore called *Earth-worms*, or *Worms* ſimply, without any Addition; ſuch are the *Dew-worm*, *Red-worm*, *Brandling*, *Gilt-tail*, *Tag-tail*, and *Meadow-worm*: Others are bred on Herbs, Plants, or Trees; as *Palmers* or *Woolbeds*, *Caterpillars*, *Oak-worm*, and *Cabbage* or *Colewort-worm*: Others on Excrements, or in dead Fleſh, as *Gentles*, *Waſps*, &c. of all which in their Order.

Dew-worm, *Garden-worm*, *Lob-worm*, or *Twatchel*, are but different Names for one and the ſame Worm, according to the Dialects of ſeveral Places. It is the principal Worm for *Salmon*, *Chevins*, *Trouts*, *Barbels*, and *Eels* of the largeſt Size; but for ſmaller Fiſh, though of the ſame Species, not ſo proper. Some of them are called *Squirrel-tails*, which have a red Head, a Streak down the Back, and a broad Tail; and theſe are eſteemed the beſt, becauſe they are toughest

toughest, most lively, and live longest in the Water: For with a dead Worm, in all probability, you will catch little or nothing. This Worm is most certainly found in a Garden, Field, by a Path Side, or in a Church-yard, late in a Summer's Evening, with a Lanthorn: Or in great Droughts, pound Walnut-Leaves, and put the Juice thereof, mixed with a little Salt Water, into their Holes, or upon the Ground where they use to rise, and it drives them out upon the Surface.

Brandlings, *Gilt-tails*, and *Red-worms*, are the principal Worms for all Sorts of Fish, and are generally to be found in old Dunghills, or some very rotten Earth that lies near them; but usually in Cow-dung or Hogs-dung rather than Horse-dung, which is somewhat too hot and dry for them. The best, however, are to be found in Tanner's Bark, which they cast up in Heaps after they have used it about their Leather. These, especially the two first, are the prime Worms Anglers use for *Trouts*, *Grayling*, *Salmon-Smelts*, *Gudgeon*, *Perch*, *Tench*, and *Bream*; which three last take the *Red-worm*, well-scoured, exceeding well. The *Brandlings* and *Gilt-tails* are taken by *Trouts* and *Graylings* both in muddy and clear Waters; but the *Red-worm* best in muddy Waters. Some say the *Brandling* is the best Worm for a *Trout*; and others the *Gilt-tail*: But if you angle with two Worms at once, as is generally used for *Trouts* in muddy Waters,

Waters, put both a *Brandling* and a *Gilt-tail* on the Hook together, but the *Gilt-tail* laſt.

The *Marſh* or *Meadow-worm* is got out of Marſh-ground, or the fertile Banks of Rivers. It is a little blewiſh, and ſhould be well ſcoured, in order to render it both tough and ſprightly. It is a choice Worm in *March*, *April*, and *September*, for *Trouts*, *Salmon-Smelts*, *Gudgeon*, *Grayling*, *Flounder*, *Bream*, and *Perch*; and ſome will conſtantly uſe it from *Candlemas* till *Michaelmas*, and prefer it before either *Brandling* or *Gilt-tail*. It requires more Time to be well-ſcoured in than either of theſe latter, and ſhould be kept in Moſs and Water fifteen Days at leaſt, before uſed.

Tag-tails are of the Colour of a Man's Hand, or a pale Fleſh Colour, with a yellow Tag on their Tail, almoſt half an Inch long: They are found in Marly Lands or Meadows, after a Shower of Rain, or in a Morning in Weather that is calm and not cold, chiefly in *March* and *April*. There are Anglers who affirm, that there is not a better Bait in the World for a *Trout*, if you angle with them whilſt the Water is diſcoloured by Rain: Some commend it likewiſe for a *Grayling*. This Worm will not endure long ſcouring; whereas the *Dew-worm*, *Red-worm*, and *Meadow-worm*, will bear more ſcouring than any of the other Sorts before-mentioned, and are the better for long keeping.

To

To *order*, *keep*, and *ſcour Worms* of every Sort, put them into very good long Moſs: Whether white, red, or green, is not very material; but the ſoft white Moſs that grows on ſome Heaths is accounted beſt, only it is difficult to be found in many Countries. The next in Goodneſs is what grows on the Buck-thorn. Waſh your Moſs well, and cleanſe it from all Earth and Filth, wringing it very dry: Then put your Moſs and Worms into an Earthen Pot, which cover cloſe, that they crawl not out: Set the Pot in a cool Place in Summer, and in Winter in a warm Place, that the Froſt may not deſtroy them. Every fourth Day in Summer change the Moſs, and once a Week in the Winter; or, at leaſt, let the Moſs be taken from them, and clean waſhed in freſh Spring Water, and ſqueezed again betwixt your Hands till it be pretty dry, and then you may put it to them again. The longer you keep them, eſpecially the *Lob-worm*, *Marſh-worm*, and *Red-worm*, before you uſe them, the better. Some mingle Camomile or Fennel with the Moſs, and not unproperly. The ſcouring Worms well makes them redder, clearer, tougher, ſprightlier, longer-lived on the Hook, and conſequently more deſirable to the Fiſh. If you are in haſte for your Worms, a little *Bole-Armoniack* put to them will further your Deſire, and make them ſcour in a ſhort Time: Or you may put the *Dew-worm*, or *Red-worm*, three or four Hours

Hours in Water, and they will ſcour themſelves, but be very weak, which a few Hours in good Moſs will recover.

Obſerve when the Knot near the Middle of the *Brandling* begins to ſwell, for then he is ſick, and if not well looked to, is near Death: To prevent which, you may feed them with Crumbs of Bread and Milk, or fine Flour and Milk, or the Yolk of an Egg and ſweet Cream coagulated over the Fire: Give them a little at a Time, and often.

If you want to have your *Brandlings* and *Gilt-tails* quickly ſcoured, put them into Moſs that is exceeding wet, and it will anſwer your Purpoſe, but not keep them long. But when you go to angle, remove them into Moſs, out of which the Water is very well wrung, or ſqueezed.

Some wet their Moſs very well in *ſweet Milk*, or, which is far better, *Ale-wort*, in which there has been no Hops, and then ſqueeze it pretty well, and Over-night put in the Worms they intend to uſe the next Day: But the Worms muſt not continue long in the Moſs thus wetted in Milk or Alewort, in regard it will greatly ſwell, and in twenty-four Hours ſpoil them. However, if you put them in freſh Moſs and Water when you have finiſhed your Day's Angling, it will revive and recover them again.

Others, perhaps a little ſuperſtitiouſly, keep them in *Moſs*, intermingled with *Earth* caſt out of a *Grave*. The leſs Time the

Party

Party hath been buried, ſay they, the better: And they put them into freſh Moſs, with ſome of this Earth, when they go to angle. Others again, in the Spring, and for a muddy Water, ſhave Ruddle or red Oker, (with which Country People mark their Sheep) into the Moſs they keep their Worms in, and ſometimes thoſe Baits will be taken eagerly, when the brighter, which are kept in Moſs and Water only, will not be taken at all: And perhaps within an Hour again the bright ones will be taken, and the ruddled Worms refuſed. Since all Ways therefore are here noted for the keeping and ordering your Worms, chuſe that Way which Experience aſſures you to be the beſt: Only this you may obſerve, that if you can otherwiſe help it, never have your Brandlings or Gilt-tails kept in Moſs, having the Water well ſqueezed out of it, leſs than 48 Hours, or above ten Days.

There is yet another Way of *cleanſing* and *preſerving Worms*, recommended by modern Anglers, and found extremely good for every Kind of them, except the *Lob-worm*. It is only this: Take a Piece of very coarſe Cloth, which has never been ſhrunk in the Fulling-Mill, waſh it very clean, and let it dry: Then ſoak it in the Liquor which a Piece of fat freſh Beef has been boiled in, and wring it out, but not ſo hard, as to preſs out all the Liquor. Then lay it in a deep Earthen Pan, which has a large Bottom, and put your Worms thereon, that they may crawl in and out,

out, and so scour themselves. When they have remained there twenty-four Hours, wash out your Cloth, as before, but do not dry it; and then wet it again with some of the same Liquor, and having placed your Worms thereon, keep them in a close Cellar. Repeat this every other Day during the Heat of Summer, and you will not only preserve your Worms alive for three Weeks or a Month, but make them very red and tough. When you take out any for angling, put them into Moss that has been well washed, and not wrung dry; and when you come home at Night, put them again into your Pan, by which they will recover themselves, and gather fresh Strength. Be sure that there is no Salt in your Beef Liquor; for if there be, it will certainly purge your Worms to Death.

I proceed now to the *Palmer-worm*, *Palmer-fly*, *Wool-bed*, or *Canker*, which are all one Worm, bred on Herbs, Plants, or Trees, and if not a perfect Caterpillar, is certainly a Species of it. These are rough and woolly on the outward Parts, whence they have the Name of *Wool-beds*. They are good Baits either for *Trout*, *Chub*, *Grayling*, *Roach*, or *Dace*. *Palmer-fly* and *May-fly* are the very Foundation of all Fly-Angling.

Caterpillars, *Oak-worm*, *Cabbage-worm*, *Colewort-worm* or *Grub*, *Crabtree-worm* or *Jack*, are all bred on Herbs, Plants, or Trees, and may be kept with the Leaves of those Trees, Herbs, or Plants on which they are bred, by renewing the said Leaves often in a Day.

Day. The Boxes they are kept in ſhould have a few ſmall Holes bored in them, to let in Air; but you may keep them beſt in withy Bark, as directed in Chap. III. Theſe are good Baits for *Chub*, *Roach*, *Dace*, and *Trout*. Fiſh bite much better at the Oak-worm, or any Worm bred on Herbs, Plants, or Trees, if you angle when they ſhew themſelves on the Top of the Water, as with the natural Fly, than if you uſe it at Midwater or Ground: For when a Gale of Wind ſhakes the Trees, the Worms fall into the Water, and preſently riſe and float on the Top, where the Fiſh ſpring at them as at Flies. They never ſink, till being toſt and beaten by the Waves, they die and loſe their native Colour, and then the Fiſh, as you may perceive by thoſe on your Hook, value them not. But though theſe Sort of Baits are taken by *Roach*, *Dace*, and *Chub* at the Top of the Water, yet you may angle 18 Inches, or lower, within the Water, with good Succeſs. For a *Trout* you may put one on the Point of a Dub-fly-Hook, and dib with it, or with the Aſh-fly and one of theſe together. The *Oak-worm* is a very good Bait, of a fine Colour, and in Ponds is a Murtherer of Roach and Dace. To get theſe Baits, beat on an *Oak*, *Crab-tree*, or *Hawthorn*, that grows over an Highway or bare Place, and when they fall upon the ſmooth Ground, you may gather them up; or go to Cabbages or Coleworts, and there hunt for them carefully.

It has been a general Notion, that the *Palmer-worm*, or *Caterpillar*, and others of this Kind,

Kind, are bred from a Dew left on the Leaves of Trees, Herbs, Plants, or Flowers, which being condenſed by the Sun's generative Heat, in three Days become living Creatures, of ſeveral Shapes and Colours: But this is evidently a Miſtake, they being bred of the Spawn of their particular Species, which, in Time, turn to be Butter-flies of various Kinds. Indeed all Flies, tho' bred of Eggs or Seed, receive Life, or vivify, as the Sun's Heat furthers or diſpoſes the ſeminal Virtue to Animation: But none of them will ever be produced by that Heat, in a Place where the Eggs were not before diſpoſed.

Bobs are of two Sorts. The Firſt is found in mellow, heathy, ſandy, light Soils, and gathered after the Plow when the Land is firſt broke up from Grazing. This is called the *Earth-bob*, *White-grub*, or *White-bait*. It is a Worm as big as two Magots, hath a red Head, and is all ſoft, and full of whitiſh Guts. You may eaſily diſcover in what Grounds they moſt are; for there the Crows will be watching, and follow the Plow very cloſe: Or you yourſelf may dig one Spade-graft deep in ſandy, heathy Ground, that has lain long fallow from the Blow, and find a ſufficient Quantity of them. Theſe are a choice Bait from the Beginning of *November* until after the Middle of *April*, for *Chub*, *Roach*, *Dace*, *Salmon Smelts*, *Trout*, *Bream*, *Tench*, and *Carp*.

When you gather theſe, put them into a Pot or Firkin, with ſome of the Soil they were

were bred in, to preſerve them: Then ſtop the Veſſel exceeding cloſe, or all will ſpoil. Set them where neither Wind nor Froſt may in the leaſt offend them, and they will keep all the Winter for your Uſe, ſo that you may always be ready furniſhed.

Some, in the Morning they go to angle, boil thoſe they intend to uſe that Day in Milk or Water, one or two Minutes, and then pour them on a Sieve to ſtrain off the Liquid; but they will not keep after boiling above two Days. In like Manner you may boil the *young Brood* of *Waſps*, *Hornets*, *Humble Bees*, &c. and they will become ſomething the tougher, and look more plump and white on the Hook. Others put theſe Baits in a little *Earth* and *Honey*, the Day before they angle with them: For *Carp* or *Bream*, into a Box with *Gumbo*.

Cow-turd-bob, or *Clap-bait*, the other Sort of Bob, is found under a Cow-turd, from about *May-day* until *Michaelmas*. It is an excellent Bait for *Trout*, if you angle with it as Cod-bait is uſed, on the Top of the Water with a briſtled Hook; only you may ſometimes put a Pair of artificial Wings and Head, ſuch as is uſed for the Dub-fly, on the Top of the Hook. This Bait is almoſt like a Gentle, but bigger, and is kept in wet Moſs, but not above three or four Days. Therefore if you would preſerve it longer, have recourſe to your Withy Bark, as you are directed for a Cod-bait, at Chap. 3.

Fiſh

Fiſh of all Sorts likewiſe take the *Clap-bait* within the Water, as the *Trout*, *Salmon Smelt*, *Grayling*, *Chub*, *Roach*, *Dace*, *Carp*, *Bream*, *Tench*, &c. For Trout and Salmon Smelt, you may imitate it with yellow Bees-wax, and angle on the Surface; having an artificial or Dub-head, and Wings at the Top of the Hook.

There are divers Sorts of *Cod-baits*, *Cadews*, or *Caſe-worms*, which are to be found in ſeveral particular Counties, and in little Brooks that have Communication with larger Rivers. The firſt I ſhall mention is called a *Piper*, whoſe Huſk or Caſe is a Piece of Reed about an Inch long, or ſomewhat more, and as big round as the Compaſs of a Silver Two-pence. Theſe Worms being kept three or four Days in a Woollen bag, with Sand at the Bottom of it, and the Bag wet once a Day, will turn yellow, and become a choice Bait for the *Chub* or *Chavender*, or indeed for any great Fiſh.

The leſſer *Cadews-worm*, called a *Cock-ſpur*, being in Shape like the Spur of a Cock, ſharp at one End, hath a Caſe made of ſmall Husks, Gravel, and Slime, moſt curiouſly intermixed. This is good Bait for any Float Fiſh, being much leſs than the *Piper-Cadews*; but muſt be ordered in the ſame Manner, and may be preſerved ten, fifteen, or twenty Days, and ſometimes longer.

The

The *Straw-worm*, or *Ruff-coat*, is another Kind of *Cadews*, whose House is made of little Pieces of Bents, Rushes, Straws, and Water-weeds, and so knit together with condensed Slime, that they stick about her not unlike the Bristles of a Hedge-hog. This *Cadews*, as well as the two former, is commonly taken in the Beginning of Summer, and is good to take any Kind of Fish, with Float or otherwise. But in order to know the several Kinds of *Cadews*, and to what Flies every particular Species turns, and then how to use them first as *Cadews*, and afterwards as *Flies*, is an Art that every one who professes to be an Angler has not leisure to search after, and if he had, is not capable of learning. I shall only observe therefore in general of the Rest, that as several Countries have their several Kinds, so they are all usually bred in the little Rills or Ditches that run into larger Rivers, and are a more proper Bait for those very Rivers, than any other.

In short, one Kind of *Cadews* are bred under Stones that lie a little hollow in shallow Rivers, or small Brooks: These are *yellow*, when ripe; and are the best Sort of Cod-bait. Others are found in Pits, Ponds, slow-running Rivers, or Ditches. Both these Sorts are excellent Baits for *Trouts*, *Graylings*, and most Sorts of Fish; as *Carp*, *Tench*, *Bream*, *Chub*, *Roach*, *Dace*, *Salmon Smelts*, and *Bleak*. The *green* Sort breed in Pits, Ponds, and Ditches, and are found in *March*,

before the yellow ones come: The other yellow Sort come in *May*, or the End of *April*, and are out of Seaſon in *July*: A third Sort, but ſmaller, come in again in *Auguſt*.

Theſe *Cod-baits* cannot endure the Wind and Cold: Therefore keep them in a thick Woollen Bag, with ſome moiſt Gravel or Sand amongſt them, got out of the ſame River, or Brook, which the Cod-baits you get were bred in. Wet them once a Day if in the Houſe, but oftner in hot Weather. When you carry them abroad, fill the Bag full of Water, and then hold the Mouth cloſe, that they drop not out, while the Water runs from them. Thus they have been kept three Weeks. Or, you may put them in an earthen Pot full of Water, with ſome of the Gravel they were bred in at the Bottom, and take them from thence into your Bag as you have Occaſion to uſe them. But the beſt Way of keeping them is in the Withy Bark, as before directed in Chap 3. To which I will only add, that ſome are ſo dextrous in making their Caſe of Bark, as to leave one End of it cloſed up by a Piece of its own Wood, and to make a Stopper for the other End with another Piece of the ſame.

One may angle *ſeveral Ways* with *Cod-baits*; either at Bottom with a Float, or within a Foot of the Bottom at Mid-water, or at Top: But if in a clear Water for the *Trout*, *Grayling*, or *Salmon Smelt*, uſe fine and ſmall Lines, never above one Hair for two or three Lengths

Lengths next the Hook. Your Lines are to be almoſt the Length of your Rod, and very light leaded, if you angle within the Water. Sometimes, when you uſe a Float, you may put on two or three together; and frequently a *Cod-bait*, to very good Effect, is joined with a *Worm*, and ſometimes with an *Artificial Fly*, to cover the Point of the Hook. At other times it is put on the Point of a Hook after an *Oak-fly*, and then they dib with it; or, which is better, let them ſink nine or ten Inches within the Water, continually raiſing, and gently moving it up and down, both within the Water, and at the Top. Some ſay *Cod-bait*, when uſed by itſelf, is always to be angled with at the Bottom, and with the fineſt Tackle; and that it is for all Times of the Year the moſt laſting of all Baits whatever, both for *Trout*, *Salmon Smelt*, and *Grayling*. Others affirm that the beſt way to angle with the *Cod-bait*, is to fiſh with it on the Top of the Water, for *Trout*, *Grayling*, or *Salmon Smelt*, as you do with the Fly; and that it muſt ſtand on the Shank of the Hook, like the Artificial Fly; becauſe if it comes into the Bent of the Hook, the Fiſh will not value it, nor if you pull the blue Gut out of it. To make it keep that Place, you muſt, when you whip your Hook, faſten a ſtiff Horſe-hair, or Hog's-briſtle, under the Silk, with the End ſtanding out about a Straw's Breadth at the Head of the Hook, from under the Silk, and pointing towards the Line. This, by the

way, is called a *briſtled Hook*, and will keep the Bait either from ſlipping totally off, or from ſliding back into the Bent of the Hook, by which means your whipping would be left naked: To remedy which, when it ſo falls out, ſome always whip the Hook they deſign for this Bait with the whiteſt Horſe-hair, which itſelf will ſhine like the Bait, and conſequently do more good, or leſs harm, than whipping with Silk, or Hair of any other Colour. Thus uſed, it is an excellent Bait for a *Trout*, *Salmon Smelt*, or *Grayling*. You may, if you pleaſe, place a ſmall ſlender *Lead* upon the Shank of the Hook, to ſink the Bait, and draw the *Cod-bait* over the Lead. You may alſo angle with a *Cod-bait* as with a *Dub-fly*, if you put on the very Top of the Shank of the Hook, a Pair of artificial Wings, and a little below, a Briſtle, to keep up the Bait from ſlipping back.

There are ſome that prepare, for *Trouts* and *Salmon Smelts*, an *Artificial Cod-bait*, by making the Body of yellow Bees-wax, and the Head of black Dubbing and black Silk: Or, you may do it by making the Body of yellow Waſh-leather, or rather Shammy, or Stuff, and the Head of black Silk.

Others make the *Counterfeit Cod-bait* of yellow Bees-wax, with an artificial black dubb'd Head, and a Pair of Wings at the Head, and angle with it as at the Dub-fly. If you imitate the *Cod-bait* artificially, it is an incomparable Bait for *Trouts* and *Salmon Smelts*. Theſe you

you may often let ſink to the Bottom, and immediately raiſe them again to the Top. Some melt yellow Bees-wax, and therein dip yellow Crewel often, and then wrap the Crewel about the Shank of the Hook, and put a Head on: And others make Uſe of a Piece of ſmall yellow Wax-candle, to imitate the *Cod-bait*, and put a dubb'd Head and Wings on the Top of the Hook.

Thoſe *Cod-baits* that are *natural*, are moſt excellent Baits for *Trouts*, *Graylings*, *Salmon Smelts*, *Chubs*, *Roach*, *Dace*, *Perch*, *Carp*, *Tench*, *Ruff*, *Bream*, and *Bleak*; but the *artificial Cod-bait* is for *Trouts* and *Salmon Smelts* only. *Note*, That *Trouts* take the Cod-bait in *clear Waters* only.

Cod-baits, when they are full ripe, turn into *Flies* of ſeveral Sorts, eſpecially into the *Green-drake*, &c.

The *Bark-worm*, or *Aſh-grub*, which are Names for one and the ſame Inſect, is plump, milk white, bent round from Head to Tail, and exceeding tender, with a red Head, reſembling a young Dore, or Humble-bee. It is in Seaſon all the Year, eſpecially from *Michaelmas* till the Middle of *May* or *June*. It is the moſt proper Bait of any, except only the *Fly* and *Cod-bait*, for the *Grayling*; and *Chub*, *Roach*, and *Dace* will likewiſe take it.

You may find it under the Bark of an *Oak*, *Aſh*, *Alder*, or *Birch*, eſpecially if they lie a

Year or more after they are fallen. It is likewiſe found in the Body of a rotted *Alder*, if you break it with an Ax: But be careful only to ſhiver the Tree in pieces with beating, ſo as cruſh not the Worm. Laſtly, you may find it under the Bark of the Stump of any Tree, when decayed.

The *Bark-worm* is very tender, and therefore to be baited on ſuch a *briſtled Hook* as before is directed for the *Cod-bait*. The Hook ſhould be put in under the Head or Chaps of the Bait, and guided down the Middle of the Belly, without ſuffering it to ſtart out by the Way, till the Point comes ſo low, that the Head of the Bait may ſtick on the Briſtle that comes out to hold it; by which means it neither ſlip off itſelf, nor will the Force of the Stream, nor ſudden pulling it out on any Miſtake, ſtrip it off. If the Hook once comes thro', there will iſſue out *Water* and *Milk*, till nothing but the Skin remain, and the Bent of the Hook will appear black thro' it. This Bait is uſually kept in Wheat-bran, and thereby grows tougher.

For *Grayling* you are to angle with this Bait, with the ſmalleſt Lines, ſuch as are directed for a *Trout*, with a Running Line in a clear Water. You are always to uſe a Float, and the leaſt Weight of Lead you can, that the Swiftneſs of the Stream will allow; and your Bait is to be always ſeven or eight Inches from the Bottom. But for other Fiſh, as *Chub*, *Roach*, and

and *Dace*, you may uſe Lines and Tackle proper for them, and angle as is ſuitable for their Humour.

The *Flag-worm*, or *Dock-worm*, may be found thus: Go to an old Pond or Pit, where there are Plenty of *Flags* or *Sedges*; pull them up by the Roots; then ſhake thoſe Roots in the Water, till all the Mud and Dirt is waſhed away from them, and then, amongſt the ſmall Strings or Fibres that grow to the Roots, you will find little *Huſks* or *Caſes* of a reddiſh or yellowiſh, and ſometimes of other Colours: Open theſe carefully with a Pin, and in them lies a little *Worm*, pale, yellow, or as white as a Gentle, but longer and ſlenderer, with Rows of Feet all down his Belly, and a red Head. This is an exceeding good Bait for *Graylings*, *Tench*, *Bream*, *Carp*, *Roach*, and *Dace*. It may, upon Occaſion, do well likewiſe for *Chub*, *Bleak*, and *Perch*.

If you pull the Flags aſunder, and cut open the round Stalk, you will find another *Worm* like the former in the Husk, but tougher, and in that Reſpect better. Both theſe Worms are to be kept in *Wheat-bran*, and baited on the *briſtled Hook*, as the Aſh-grub; and when you angle for *Graylings* with them, uſe a Float, and the ſmalleſt Lines, and let the Bait be eight or nine Inches from the Ground. A *Trout* rarely takes either *Aſh-grub*, or *Flag-worm*.

Gentles, or *Maggots*, are kept with dead Fleſh, Beaſts Liver, or Suet: Or, which is

better you may both keep and ſcour them in Meal or Wheat-bran. In order to breed them, prick a *Beaſt's Liver* full of Holes; hang it in the Sun in Summer-Time, and ſet under it an old Barrel, or ſmall Firkin, with Clay and Bran in it; into which they will drop, and cleanſe themſelves, and be always ready for Uſe. In this Manner Gentles may be produced till *Michaelmas*: But if you would fiſh with them from *Michaelmas* to *May-Day*, you muſt get a dead *Cat*, *Kite*, or other *Carrion*, at the latter End of *September*, and let it be Fly-blown; and when the *Gentles* begin to be alive and ſtir, bury it and them together in moiſt Earth, deep in the Ground, that the Froſt may neither kill nor injure them, and they will ſerve for Uſe till *March* and *April* following, about which Time they turn to be *Fleſh-flies*.

Gentles are ſometimes added to a *Worm*, and ſometimes put on the Point of a *Dub-fly Hook* for *Salmon-Smelts*; but moſt commonly they are uſed by themſelves, frequently two or three on a Hook at a Time. When you go to fiſh with *Gentles*, you may put them in a Horn, wherein there are ſmall Holes bored to let in Air, either with ſome *Wheat-bran* only, or a few Shavings of a Barber's *ſweet Waſh-ball* among the Bran: But the beſt Way is to put them the Day you angle in a Box with ſome *Gum-Ivy*, and you will find it of no ſmall Effect.

Others

Others anoint their *Gentle-Horn* with *Honey*; and others again perfume it with Musk and Civet. You may imitate a *Gentle* with white *Jersey* Wool, if you are desirous to join it to another Bait for *Salmon-Smelts*, when you angle at top for them.

Gentles are excellent good Baits for *Roach*, *Dace*, *Chub*, *Carp*, *Tench*, *Barbel*, *Bream*, and *Bleak*; and in some Rivers and Seasons, if the Water be clear, even a *Gudgeon* or *Trout* will take them.

As it would be tedious to recapitulate in *Verse* all that may be said of the several Kinds of *Baits*, I shall content myself with the following Directions concerning some of the principal Species in this and the remaining Chapters of the *first Part* of this Book. They are extracted chiefly from the *Piscatory Eclogues* of Mr. *Moses Browne*, to whom I shall have other Obligations in the Course of my Work.

If, Anglers, *while the Summer Sports persuade,*
You hope your Toils with kindly Hours repaid,
With mingling Threads be artful Flies *design'd,*
And chuse, of various Sorts, the native Kind;
From sedgy Brooks the husky Cadews *bear,*
And from the Sord the bedded Worm *prepare*;
Or watch where Wasps *their* Infant Brood *display,*
And from the Hives the stingless Young convey:
Nor less may in the blended Choice avail,
To hoard th' Autumnal Bee, *and dewy Snail:*

For oft' invited by the varied Bait,
The heedleſs Fiſh *are lur'd to tempt their Fate;*
Whether in Depths retir'd ſecure they lie,
Or leap, expos'd, to ſnatch the plunging Fly.
But, if in wintry Hours *you rather chuſe,*
By lonely Floods the bending Reed *to uſe,*
Obſerve in Autumn, *when the lab'ring Swain*
The yielding Green-ſord *plows, or* ſandy Plain;
If Crows *in Troops attend the paſſing Share,*
Purſue the Track, and eye the Turfs with Care:
A Worm *within the parted Clods you'll find,*
Of whitiſh Hue, *the* Beetle's *early Kind:*
Of theſe be careful in your Stores to place,
A Food delicious to the wat'ry Race:
Or, bury'd deep, with Eggs *prolific ſtor'd,*
Preſerve the Carrion-Cat, *of* Gentles *a ſure Hoard.*

CHAP. V.

A Continuation of natural Baits; particularly Blood, Grain, Fiſh, and Fiſh-Spawn, Fruits, Flies, and other Inſects.

THE Variety of natural Baits made uſe of in Angling, and the Manners of uſing them are almoſt infinite, and therefore much muſt be left to Experience in treating of this Subject. However, as I have already been very copious upon the Vermicular and Caterpillar Kinds, I ſhall in this Chapter enumerate all the other Sorts commonly known, and more than

than ever were tried by any one Angler; reſerving only the Paſtes and Ointments to be treated of by themſelves.

To make a Bait with *Sheep's-Blood* you muſt dry it in the Air upon a Board or Trencher, till it becomes pretty hard: Then cut it into ſmall Pieces, proportioned to the Size of the Hook. Some add a little Salt to it, which keeps it from growing black. This is a good Bait for *Chub*, *Roach*, and *Dace*, if rightly ordered.

When you uſe any Sort of *Grain*, as *Wheat* or *Malt*, boil it ſoft in *Milk*, or, which is liked better, in *Sweet-wort*, and peel off the outward *Rind*, which is the *Bran*. It is then fit for Uſe; though ſome afterwards, and indeed not without Reaſon, fry it in *Honey* and *Milk*, or ſteep it in ſome ſtrong-ſcented Oils, as *Amber*, *Spike*, *Polypody*, *Ivy*, *Anniſe*, *Turpentine*, or Oil of *Peter*. *Grain* is a good Bait, either in Winter or Summer, for *Chub*, *Roach*, *Dace*, and *Bleak*. That Fiſh can ſmell, few or none doubt; but what Sort of Smells they moſt delight in, is the great Queſtion, that is not yet perfectly decided, nor can be any otherways than by long Experience, and the Trial of various odoriferous Oils.

The *Ant-fly* is moſt plentiful in the End of *June*, *July*, *Auguſt*, and moſt of *September*. During that Seaſon, go to the *Ant-hills* or *Mole-hills*, where they breed, and take a great Handful of the *Earth*, with as much of the Roots of the *Graſs* that grows on thoſe Hillocks:

locks: Put all into a large Glass *Bottle*, and then gather a great Quantity of the blackest Ant-flies, handling their Bodies and Wings tenderly, as not in the least to bruise them: Put them into your *Bottle* (or into a *Firkin*, if you would keep them long) first washed with *Honey*, or *Water* and *Honey*. These, in any Stream and clear Water, are a mortal Bait for *Roach*, *Dace*, and *Chub*; and you must angle with them under the Water, no less than a Handful from the Bottom.

Take an *Ant-fly* or *May-fly*, and sink him with a little Lead to the Bottom, near the Piles of a Bridge, Posts of a Wier or Flood-gate, or any other deep Place, where *Roaches* lie quietly, and then pull your Fly up very leisurely, and usually a *Roach* will follow your Bait to the very Top of the Water, and gaze on it there, and then run at it eagerly, lest the Fly escape him. Perhaps any other Fly may have the same Effect, but I have tried only these. The *Ant-fly* may be kept alive, as is before directed, two or three Months. Ant-flies are not always of the very same Colour, some being *blackish*, others *reddish*, and others of other Hues.

It will be no unpleasant Digression in this Place, to make a few Observations on that *small*, but naturally *wise*, *industrious*, and *politick* Creature, the *Ant*, or *Pismire*, of which our Ant-fly is bred. It is observed to gather its Food in Summer, in the Full, and to rest in the New Moons. They live together like a *Com-*

a *Commonwealth*. When they gather Grain, they dry and bite it at both Ends, that it may not grow. They wear away Stones by their Aſſiduity, and make beaten Roadways. They help one another in drawing their Burdens, damming out Water, and burying their Dead. The Greater lead the Way, and the Leſſer drag the Corn: And, when dirty, they cleanſe themſelves before they enter into their Habitations. They teach the Young to labour, but expel the Idle and Slothful: And when they move their Stores, it is ſaid to be a Sign of foul Weather. They caſt up the Earth over the Mouth of their Caves, that the Water may not enter them. In theſe Habitations they have three Cells; in the one they live, in another they breed and bury, and in the third they keep their Corn. They generate in Winter, and bring forth Eggs, which, in the Spring, are Ants. When old, they grow winged, and then ſuddenly after die.

To angle with the *young Brood* of *Waſps*, *Hornets*, and *Humble-bees*, you muſt dry them on a Fire-ſhovel or *Tile-ſtone*, in an Oven that has cooled after baking. To avoid their being burned, lay them on a thin Board or Chip, and cover them with another, ſo ſupported as not to cruſh them. This Way they will keep long, and ſtick on the Hook well. If you boil them a Minute or two in Water or Milk, they grow black in three or four Days, but are good for preſent Uſe. Theſe are ſingular good *Baits* for *Roach*, *Dace*, *Chub*, *Eel*, *Bream*, *Flounder*; and

and you may try them for *Carp*, *Tench*, *Barbel* and *Bleak*, which will ſeldom refuſe them. Some uſe *Waſps*, *Hornets*, and *Humble-bees*, when their Legs and Wings are a very little grown forth, eſpecially for the *Chub*.

According to an old Angler, the *Sting* of *Hornets* (which muſt ſometimes be expected) is cured by *Venice Treacle* taken inwardly, and applying outwardly *Cow-Dung* and *Faſting Spittle*. The Sting of *Waſps* is worſe than that of *Bees*, and is cured by the Application of *Cow-Dung* mixed with *Barley-meal*, or *Leaven* mixed with *Oil* and *Vinegar*. The *old Hornets* and *Waſps* only can ſting, and frequently do ſo when their Neſts are taken; but the *young Brood* of them, which are for the *Baits*, are not capable to do any Injury.

Salmon-Spawn, a very good Bait for *Chub*, and in ſome Rivers for *Trouts*. The common Way of uſing it, is to take the *Spawn*, and boil it ſo hard as to ſtick on the Hook, though ſome uſe it without boiling it at all. Others put a good Quantity of Salt to their *Spawn*, and hang it in a Linnen Bag, in the Kitchen, far from the Fire, where it will become hard; and then they ſteep it the Night before it is uſed in ſome ſpirituous Liquor. Some preſerve *Salmon Spawn*, by laying it upon *Wool*, in a Pot, one Layer of *Spawn* and another of *Wool*. It is a lovely Bait for the Winter and Spring, eſpecially if uſed where *Salmons* uſe to ſpawn; for thither

thither the Fiſh are gathered, and there expect it.

The *Minnow*, *Loach*, and *Bull-head*, are Baits for the *Pike*, the *Perch*, the *Chub*, the *Eel*, and the *great Trout*. The *Trout* takes theſe Baits about a Foot within the Water, and ſometimes lower in the Deeps, in the Day-time, in *March*, *April*, and *September*, when the Wind is in the South, Weſt, or South-weſt, and blows ſtrongly, curling the Waters. In Summer Months, from the Middle of *April* till the End of *Auguſt*, he will not take them in the Day-time, unleſs the Weather be dark, and the Wind high and bluſtering; and then you muſt add ſome Lead to the Line, and ſink theſe Baits to the Bottom. But in the Night, at Night-Hooks, he takes them freely from the Beginning of *March* till *Michaelmas*. *Pike*, *Perch*, and *Chub*, will take them either by Day or Night; only the *Chub* values them not ſo much in the Day as the Night, in the four hot Months of *May*, *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*. But both *Pike*, *Perch*, *Chub*, *Trout*, and *Eel*, take them exceeding well in the Night, at Night-Hooks, from the Beginning of *March* till after *Michaelmas*. *Minnows* of a middle Size, and whitiſh, are the beſt. But though *Minnows* are good Baits, yet Experience aſſures us, that a ſmall *Loach* or *Bull-head*, his Gill Fins being cut off, are better than *Minnows* by many Degrees. When you angle with *Minnow*, *ſmall Loach* or *Bull-head*, for

for *Trout*, be ſure that the Bait turn quick, and be always in Motion, and in a clear Water, for which we ſhall give Directions in its proper Place.

Lamprey, *Pride*, or *Seven-Eyes*, are like ſmall Eels, no thicker than a Straw, and may be found in ſandy muddy Heaps, near the Side of Rivers, almoſt as eaſily as Worms in a Dunghill. They are good Baits, either by Night or Day, for *Chubs* and *Eels*, and ſo are likewiſe the ſmall *Brood of Eels* for *Chubs*.

Both the white and the black *Snail*, his Belly being ſlit, that the white may appear, are good Baits for the *Chub*, very early in the Morning; but in the Heat of the Day he cares not for them. *Trouts* and *Eels* will likewiſe take them at the Night-hook.

The *Graſshopper* is a Creature having no *Mouth*, only a *Pipe* in the Breaſt to ſuck in Dew, of which it is ſuppoſed to live. The Antients uſed to eat them. There are two, if not three Sorts of them, alike in Shape, but differing in Colour: The one is *green coloured*, the other *dun*, and the third of a *yellowiſh green* on the Body. They are principally found in green Meadows and Graſs; and Fiſh take them beſt in the latter End of *June*, all *July*, and *Auguſt*. The middle-ſized are beſt; but you muſt cut off their Legs and outward Wings. For *Trout* or *Grayling* you may lead your Hook on the Shank, with a Plate of Lead, made narroweſt and ſlendereſt at the Bent of the Hook, that the Bait may come over it; then

then draw him over the Lead; after put a leſſer *Graſshopper* or a *Cod-bait* on the Point, and keep your Bait in continual Motion, lifting it up, and ſinking it again. A *Chub* will likewiſe take this Bait very well.

There are ſome Anglers who with good Succeſs uſe only the Tail, or half of the *Graſshopper*, putting on the Hook firſt a young *Beetle*, or *Sharn-bud*, which is found in a Cow-turd of a Day or two old. If you take off the higher and hard Wings, ſhe puts forth a long Pair, coloured like thoſe of the *Pad-fly*. This, in a cloſe Water, and which breeds a large *Trout*, is as killing a Bait as any whatever: But it is not ſo good in a ſhallow, very clear, and open River. You may dib with a *Graſshopper*, either for *Chub* or *Trout*. The green Graſshopper is generally uſed.

The *Houſe-cricket*, a winged Inſect, like a Graſshopper, that lives in Chimneys and warm Places, and ſings almoſt continually, is ſaid by ſome to be a good Bait for *Chubs*, if you dib with it, or permit it to ſink within the Water.

Water-cricket, *Water-louſe*, or *Creeper*, which are all one, are excellent good for a *Trout*, in *March* and *April*, or ſometimes in *May* in ſome Rivers. They are found under Stones that lie hollow in the Water, and you may fiſh with them within half a Foot or a Foot of the Bottom. Others let their Bait drag on the Ground; and other good Anglers affirm, that if you dibble with it in the Streams about

about Noon, on a Sun-ſhiny Day, two or three Hours in the Month of *April*, for *Trouts*, it will prove a murdering Bait. 'Tis always to be uſed in a clear Water, and is to be found only in very ſtony Rivers, not in thoſe that calmly glide on Sand, and champaign Grounds. Theſe *Creepers* always turn into *Stone-flies* about *May-Day*.

Lip-berries, *Aron-berries*, or Berries of *Cuckow-Pints*, or *Wake-Robin*, Bare erries proceeding from the Herb *Aron*, and are ripe and fit for Uſe in *July* and *Auguſt*. They are of a lovely tranſparent red, or Orange Colour. They are good Baits for *Roach* and *Chub*, eſpecially the latter. Any Apothecary or Herb-woman will ſhew you the Herb in *May*, and you muſt look for the Berries or Fruit in *July* and *Auguſt*. You may put four or five on the Hook at a Time for the *Chub*.

Cherries, *Rasberries*, *Blackberries*, and *Mulberries*, are all Baits for *Chubs*, which will take them beſt in Ponds or Rivers where ſuch Trees grow near the Water, and ſuch Fruit frequently drop into them. Sometimes a Carp will take them.

Oat-cake, or *Cheeſe*, are good Baits to angle with for *Chub*, *Roach*, *Dace*, and *Barbel*, when you uſe a ledger Bait. Your *Cheeſe* may be kept a Day or two (if it be not new, which it ought to be) in a wet Linnen Cloth, or ſteeped a little in Honey.

When

When you would keep *Baits* for the *Pike*, or *Night-hooks*, ſuch as ſmall *Roach*, *Dace*, *Gudgeon*, *Bleak*, *Loach*, *Salmon-Smelt*, *Minnow*, *Smelt*, ſmall *Trout*, ſmall *Perch*, and ſmall *Eels*, carry them in *Wheat-bran*, which will dry up the ſlimy Moiſture that is on them, and ſo preſerve them longer, and cauſe them to ſtick more firm on the Hook. Beſides, there is a green watery Humour that iſſues out of Fiſh, which will infect and rot them; but the Bran dries it up, and prevents that Miſchief.

Oak-fly, *Aſh-fly*, or *Woodcock-fly*, an Inſect called by all theſe Names in different Places, is a very good Fly from the Beginning of *May* till the End of *Auguſt*. It is of a browniſh Hue, and found on the Body of an *Oak* or *Aſh*. It ſtands frequently with the Head downwards, towards the Root of the Tree. It is very proper for a Trout; and the Way to uſe it, is to put one on the Hook length-ways, and ſometimes two, or to follow the Direction for baiting the *May-fly* for dibbing, which ſee. If you put it on length-ways, fix a Cod-bait at the Point of the Hook, and let them ſink ſix Inches or a Foot into the Water; and then raiſe them again gently, having a ſhort dibbing Line, and it will prove a fatal Bait for a *Trout* in clear Water. Sometimes inſtead of a *Cod-bait* uſe an *Oak-worm*, or *green Grub*, got off of an Haw-thorn.

There are ſeveral Sorts of *May-flies*, which indeed are the Foundation of all *Fly-Angling*; but

but the *Green-drake* and *Stone-fly* have the Preheminence.

The *Green-drake* is taken both in Streams and ſtill Waters, at all Hours of the Day, while in Seaſon; the *Stone-fly* chiefly in the Morning and Evening.

The *Green-drake*, when at full Maturity, has high Wings, cloſed exactly upon his Back, like the Butter-fly, which he alſo reſembles in his Motion. His Body is yellow, ſometimes paler and ſometimes darker, ribbed with Rows of green, long and ſlender, and growing ſharp towards the Tail; at the End of which he hath three long ſmall Whisks, of a very dark Colour. This Tail turns up towards his Back, like a *Mallard*'s, whence he has the Name of *Green-drake*. He comes in uſually about the Middle of *May*, and is in Seaſon till *Midſummer*: Though his Time of coming in and going out is ſometimes ſooner or later in different Years.

The *Stone-fly* lies under hollow Stones, at the River-ſide. His Body is long and pretty thick, and almoſt as broad at the Tail as in the Middle. He is of a fine brown Colour, ribbed with yellow, which predominates more on his Belly than on his Back. He hath two or three Whisks at the End of his Tail, and two little Horns on his Head. His Wings, when full-grown, are double, and flat down his Back, near the ſame Colour, but rather darker than his Body. He ſeldom flies, but often

often ſwims and paddles with ſeveral Feet he has under his Belly: Whereas the *Drake* will mount very high in the Air.

The *Stone-fly* comes in Seaſon about the Middle of *April*, and continues till *Midſummer* or the End of *June*. He is more proper for Streams than ſtill Waters, except when there is a briſk Wind. You may angle with him within Water, at Bottom, or near it; or at Mid-water, if you pull off his Wings; and he is ſometimes beſt taken in this Manner.

The *yellow May-fly* and *Gray-drake* are ſhaped like the *Green-drake*, and the *Camblet-fly* reſembles a Moth. They are all good in the ſame Seaſon.

The *Hawthorn-fly* is black, and to be found on every *Hawthorn*-buſh, ſoon after the Leaves are ſprung forth. It is uſed for dibbing in ſome Rivers for *Trouts*.

If you pull out the *Eyes* of thoſe Fiſh you catch, and put them on the Hook, they are an excellent Bait for moſt Sorts of Fiſh: The like is remarked of *Fiſh-Livers*.

The yellowiſh bright *Frogs* that are found in *June* and *July*, in green Meadows, are good Baits for *Chubs*, *Pikes*, and *Perches*. Put your Hook through the Skin of the Leg, towards the upper Part of it. Uſe a ſmall *Frog* for *Perch* and *Chub*.

The *great Moth* has a very large Head, not unlike to an *Owl*, with whitiſh Wings, and a yellowiſh Body. You may find them flying

flying out in Summer Evenings, in Gardens, when ſome Wind is ſtirring. This Fly the *Chub* delights in very much, and you are to dibble with it.

Fat Bacon is affirm'd by ſome to be a very good Bait for *Bhub* and *Pike*, at *Snap* eſpecially, in the Winter Months, that is, from the End of *Auguſt*, till the Beginning of *April*.

The *Earwig* is a good Bait for *Salmon Smelts*. They are to be got by laying a white Linnen Cloth, or a Cow's Hoof, in a Garden Hedge, a Night or two: Uſe them within the Water, near the Bottom.

The *black Bee* is a great black Inſect, that breeds in Clay Walls, and is good for the *Chub*. Some cut off his Legs and upper Wings.

Fern-fly, or *Fern-bud*, is a thick ſhort Fly, to be found on Fern, from about *May-day*, till the End of *Auguſt*, or later. This Fly hath a thick ſhort Body, and two Pair of Wings; the uppermoſt are hard and red on one Side; but the undermoſt are tender, diaphanous, and blackiſh. We often take off the uppermoſt Wings, and dibble with this Fly. A *Trout* will take it about ten Days together, in ſome Part of *May*; but the *Chub* takes them all the Summer.

Pith, or *Marrow*, in an *Ox*, *Cow*, *Calf*, or *Sheep's Back-bone*, is uſed by ſome Anglers. They adviſe you to be very tender in taking off the tough outward Skin of that in an Ox or Cow's Back-bone; but to be ſure you leave the inward white

white Skin ſafe and untouched, or your Labour is loſt. This, they affirm, is an excellent Bait for a *Chub* all the Winter long: And ſo is the Brains of an Ox or Cow, either for Winter or Summer. The aforeſaid Pith is alſo a good Bait for Eels at Night Hook.

Fiſh take all Sorts of *Baits* moſt eagerly and freely, and with the leaſt Suſpicion, when you preſent them in ſuch Order and Manner as Nature affords them, or as the Fiſh themſelves uſually take them. Some are peculiar to certain Countries and Rivers, of which every Angler may in his own Place make his proper Obſervation. Several of the foregoing Baits will be taken in ſome particular Rivers, and not in others; and the ſame Baits are taken earlier in ſome Rivers than others, and ſooner or later in ſome Years than others, according to the Quality and Seaſon of the Year. *Ground-baits* in general are indeed uſeful and certain almoſt in every River; but it is otherwiſe with the *Fly*, which varies in Colour, Kind, Shape, or Proportion, almoſt in every River, nay, in the very ſame River, at five or ſix Miles diſtance.

In the River *Thames* Anglers for *Roach* uſe a *Perriwinkle*, which they gather in Shells. They break the Shells, and take the Perriwinkle whole. *Shrimps* taken out of the Shell are good Baits for *Pike* and *Chub*. The white *Blite* with much Seed, by ſome called *All-Seed*, is a very acceptable Bait to Fiſh, ſay ſome Authors.

Let

Let all the *Baits* for the *Pike* be alive the ſame Morning you uſe them; for, if they are ſtale, and not ſweet, he refuſes them.

I have done with this Chapter, after giving in Verſe one general Rule for the baiting with *Natural Flies.*

To fiſh with nat'ral Flies *whene'er you chuſe,*
Obſerve the Seaſon, and provide for Uſe:
Obſerve the Fiſh, *as round for Prey they rove,*
And take your Baits where beſt they ſeem to love.
For ſearch all Nature, and this Truth you'll find,
Variety, *that Miſtreſs of Mankind,*
Is not to Species, *nor to* Sex *confin'd.*

CHAP. VI.

Of Paſtes and Unguents.

PASTES are a Species of artificial Baits, to be angled with at Ground or within the Water. There are, or may be, as many diſtinct Sorts of them as the Luxuriancy of every Fancy will ſuggeſt; but the ſubſequent are in the higheſt Eſteem.

Take *Bean-flour*, or, if that be not to be got, *Wheat-flour*, and the tendereſt Part of the Leg of a young *Rabbet*, *Whelp*, or *Kitten*; as much *Virgins-Wax* and *Sheep-Suet*: Beat them in a *Mortar* till they are perfectly incorporated; then, with a little clarified *Honey*, temper them before the *Fire* into a *Paſte*.

Some

Some omit the *Bean* and *Wheat-flour*, others the *Virgins-wax* and *Sheep Suet*, only when they uſe it for *Carps*.

With Crumbs of *White-bread* and *Honey* alone, you may make, with clean Hands, a *Paſte* for *Carp* and *Tench*.

And of the ſame *Crumbs* with only a little Water, you may make a Paſte for *Roach* and *Dace*.

For *Barbel* in *Auguſt*, beat *Mutton Kidney Suet* and ſoft new *Cheeſe* into a *Paſte*.

Take the ſtrongeſt *Cheeſe* pounded in a Mortar, with ſo much *Butter* and *Saffron*, as being beaten ſmall will turn it to a Lemon Colour, and make a *Paſte* for *Chubs* in the Winter.

Take *Sheep's Blood*, *Cheeſe*, fine *White-bread* and clarified *Honey*: Make all into a *Paſte*.

Take *Cherries* without Stones, *Sheeps Blood*, fine *Bread*, and *Saffron* to colour it with, and make a *Paſte*.

Take fat old *Cheeſe*, ſtrong *Rennet*, *Mutton Kidney Suet*, *Wheat-flour*, and *Anniſeed-water*; beat them all into a *Paſte*. If it be for *Chub*, add ſome *roaſted Bacon*.

Take the fatteſt old *Cheeſe*, the ſtrongeſt *Rennet*, *Mutton Kidney Suet*, and *Turmerick* reduced into a fine Powder; work all into a *Paſte*. Add the *Turmerick* only till the *Paſte* become of a very fine yellow Colour. This is excellent for *Chub*, as are alſo the two following.

Take ſome of the *oldeſt* and *ſtrongeſt Cheſhire Cheeſe* you can get, the Crumb of a fine *Manchet*, or *French Roll*, and ſome *Sheep's Kidney Suet*: Put theſe in a Mortar, and beat them into a *Paſte*, adding as much clarified *Honey* as will be ſufficient to ſweeten it.

Take a few *Shrimps* or *Prawns*, pull off their *Shells* and *Skins*, and beat the *clear Meat* in a Mortar, with a little *Honey*, till it becomes a *Paſte*. When you bait with a Piece of this, let the Point of the Hook be but lightly covered.

Take fine *Flour* and *Butter*, with *Saffron* to colour it, and make a *Paſte* for *Roach* and *Dace*.

But among all the Variety of *Paſtes*, there is none ſo often uſed as that ſimple and plain one made with *White-bread* and *Milk*, which requires only clean Hands.

The following *Obſervations* concerning *Paſtes*, may be of Uſe to a young Angler, being all founded on Experience.

In *September*, and all the Winter Months, when you angle for *Chub*, *Carp*, and *Bream* with *Paſte*, let the Bait be as big as a large *Hazle-nut*.: But for *Roach* and *Dace*, the Bigneſs of an ordinary *Bean* is ſufficient.

You may add to any *Paſte*, *Aſſa-fœtida*, *Oil of Polipody of the Oak*, *Oil of Ivy*, *Oil of Peter*, *Gum Ivy*, and many other Things, which ſometimes wonderfully increaſe your Sport.

Into

Into all Sorts of *Paſtes* whatſoever, beat a little *Cotton-Wooll*, *ſhaved Lint*, or *fine Flax*, which will make it *ſtick* well on the Hook, and not eaſily waſh off: And if you would have the Paſte keep long, put *Virgins Wax* and *clarified Honey* into it.

When you angle with *Paſte*, or *any tender Bait*, have a *ſmall Hook*, a *quick Eye*, a *nimble Hand* and *Rod*, and the latter pretty *ſtiff* too, or both *Bait* and *Fiſh* are in danger to be loſt. You muſt *ſtrike* at the very *firſt Time* you perceive them *bite* or *nibble*. *Paſtes* are to be uſed in *Pits*, *Ponds*, *Mears*, or *ſlow running Rivers* only. *Note*, this *Rule* is general, and holds in all very tender Baits.

When you angle with Paſte, or any very *tender Bait*, uſe a Float of *Quill*, rather than of *Cork*; becauſe Cork will not ſo eaſily dip under Water, nor the Bite ſo ſoon be preceived.

Paſtes are very good Baits for *Chub*, *Roach*, *Dace*, *Barbel*, *Carp*, *Tench*, *Bream*, and *Bleak*. When you would have your Paſtes of a *yellow Colour*, always mix into it a little *Turmerick*; but when you deſire it of a *Fleſh-Colour*, tincture it with a little of the beſt *Vermilion*.

As to *Ointments* or *Unguents*, many ingenious Anglers eſteem them ſo, for the effectual Furtherance of this Sport, that they affirm they will not only *allure* but even *compel* Fiſh to bite. For my own Part, I honeſtly confeſs, that though I have found them in ſome

meaſure *advantageous* to my Recreation, yet far from ſo high a Degree, as has been pretended. However it is worth every Sportſman's while to be acquainted with ſome of them, that if they are willing to be at the Expence and Labour of a Trial, they may ſelect thoſe for their daily Uſe, which on Experience they ſhall find to be the beſt. One or two of thoſe that are moſt highly commended, would, I own, be more pleaſing to me, were they more *ſimple*, and leſs ſuperſtitiouſly compounded: In particular this by Monſieur *Charras*, Apothecary Royal to the late *French* King, *Lewis* the Fourteenth.

Take *Man's Fat* and *C[illegible]'s Fat*, of each half an Ounce; *Mummy* finely powder'd, three Drams; *Cummin-ſeed* finely powdered, one Dram; diſtilled *Oil of Aniſe* and *Spike*, of each ſix Drops; *Civet*, two Grains; and *Camphire*, four Grains: Make an *Ointment* according to Art. When you angle with this, anoint eight Inches of the *Line* next the *Hook*. Keep it in a *Pewter-Box*, made ſomething taper: And, when you uſe it, never angle with leſs than two or three *Hairs* next the Hook; becauſe if you angle with one Hair, it will not ſtick ſo well to the Line. If you mix ſome of this *Ointment* with a little *Venice Turpentine*, it will ſtick the faſter; but clog not your Line with too much on at a Time.

Take *Gum-Ivy*, and put a good Quantity of it into a *Box* made of *Oak*, like thoſe the Apothecaries uſe of white Wood for their Pills.

Rub

Rub the Inside of the Box with this Gum, and when you angle, put three or four *Worms* therein, letting them remain but a short Time; for if long it kills them: Then take them out, and use them, putting more in their Stead, out of the *Worm-bag* and *Moss*; and continue to do this all Day.

Gum-Ivy is a Tear which drops from the Body of the larger *Ivy*, being wounded. It is of a yellowish red *Colour*, of a strong *Scent* and sharp *Taste*. That which is sold in the Shops is often *Counterfeit* and *Adulterate*: Therefore, to get true *Gum-Ivy*, at *Michaelmas* or Spring, drive several great *Nails* into large *Ivy Stalks*, and having wriggled them till they become very loose, let them remain, and a Gum will issue out of the Hole. Or you may slit several great *Ivy Stalks*, and visit them once a Month, or oftner, to see what *Gum* flows from the wounded Part. This *Gum* is excellent for the Angler's Use; perhaps nothing more so under the Form of an *Unguent*.

Take *Assa-fœtida*, half an Ounce; *Camphire*, two Drams; bruise them well together with some Drops of *Oil of Olive*, and put it in a *Pewter-box*, to use as the Receipt from Monsieur *Charras*. Some, instead of *Oil of Olive*, use the Chymical *Oil of Lavender* and *Camomile*; and some add the Quantity of a Nutmeg of *Venice Turpentine* to it. But for a *Trout* in a muddy Water, and for *Gudgeons* in a

clear Water, the beſt Unguent is thus compounded, *viz.*

Take *Aſſa-fœtida*, three Drams; *Camphire*, one Dram; *Venice Turpentine*, one Dram; beat all together with ſome Drops of the Chymical *Oils of Lavender* and *Camomile*, of each an equal Quantity; and uſe it as in the firſt Direction.

Camphire is a reſinous *Gum*, partly flowing of its own accord, but chiefly by Inciſion, from a tall Tree growing in *India*. The *Bornean* Camphire is beſt. Chuſe that which is *white* and *clear* like Cryſtal, *ſtrong ſcented*, will eaſily *crumble* between the Fingers, and being *fired* will ſcarcely be *quenched*. There is a *counterfeit* or *factitious* Sort, that put into a hot Loaf will parch; but the true will melt. It will keep many Years in *Flax-ſeed*, if it be not expoſed to the Air; otherwiſe it will evaporate and conſume to nothing.

Aſſa-fœtida grows in *Media*, *Lybia*, and *Syria*, and is a gummy Juice of *Laſer*, *Laſerpitium*, or *Sylphion*, gathered from the Root or Stalk cut open. Chuſe that which is *pure*, *fine*, *clammy*, and *ſmelling* almoſt like *Garlick*. It will keep good many Years, but it is often *counterfeited* or *adulterated*, by mixing *Meal*, *Bran*, and the Gum *Sagapenum* together.

Take *Venice Turpentine*, the beſt *Hive-honey*, and *Oil of Polypody* of the Oak, drawn by Retort; mix all together, and uſe it as the firſt Ointment.

Take

Take *Oil of Ivy-berries*, made by *Expreſſion* or *Infuſion*, and put ſome in a *Box*, and uſe it as is directed for the *Gum-Ivy* in the ſecond Receipt.

Diſſolve *Gum-Ivy* in the *Oil of Spike*, and anoint the Bait with it. Mr. *Walton* preſcribes this for a Pike.

Put *Camphire* in the *Moſs*, wherein are your Worms, the Day you angle.

Diſſolve two Ounces of *Gum-Ivy* in a *Gill* of Spring-water; mix them together with the like Quantity of the *Oil of Sweet Almonds*; then take what Quantity of Worms you intend to uſe that Day, being firſt well ſcoured in *Moſs*, and put them in *Linnen Thrums* (the Ends of the Weaver's *Warp* when he has finiſhed his Piece) well waſhed in Spring-water, and ſqueezed: Then wet the *Thrums* in this Compoſition, and put them and the *Worms* in a *Linnen-bag*, out of which uſe them.

Take *Aſſa-fætida*, three Drams; *Spikenard* of *Spain*, one Dram: Put them in a Pint of *Spring-water*, and let them ſtand in a ſhady Place fourteen Days in the Ground: Then take the Solution out, and having drained it thro' a Linnen Cloth, put to the Liquor one Dram of *Sperma Ceti*, and keep it cloſe in a ſtrong *Glaſs-bottle*. When you go to angle, take what Quantity of *Worms* you intend to uſe that Day, (they being firſt well ſcoured in *Moſs*) put them upon a *Pewter Saucer*, and pour a little of this Water upon them; then put them in the *Moſs* again, and uſe them.

Take *Juice of Camomile*, half a Spoonful; Chymical *Oil of Spike*, one Dram; *Oil of Comfrey* by Infuſion, one Dram and an half; *Gooſe-greaſe*, two Drams: Theſe being well diſſolved over the Fire, let them ſtand till they are cold; then put them in a ſtrong Glaſs-bottle, which keep unſtopped three or four Days; Stop it afterwards very well, and when you angle, anoint the Bait with this Compoſition.

Some add to it three Drams of the *Spirit* of *Vitriol*, and call it the *univerſal* and *infallible Bait*.

Take a Handful of *Houſeleek*, and half a Handful of *inner green Bark* of the *Ivy Stalk*: Pound theſe well together, and preſs out the *Juice*, and wet your *Moſs* therewith. When you angle, put ſix or eight Worms therein out of the other Bag.

Some uſe the Juice of *Nettles* and *Houſeleek* as the laſt Receipt, and ſome only the Juice of *Houſeleek*.

Some anoint their *Bait* with the *Marrow* got out of a *Heron's Thigh-bone*; and ſome uſe the *Fat* and *Greaſe* of a *Heron*.

Some adviſe to take the *Bones* or *Scull* of a *dead Man*, at the Opening of a Grave, and beat them into Powder, and to put of this Powder into the *Moſs* wherein you keep your *Worms*; but others like the Grave Earth as well, and perhaps both may be as well let alone.

Take of *Man's Fat*, *Cat's Fat*, *Heron's Fat*, and of the beſt *Aſſa-fœtida*, of each two Drams;

Mum-

Mummy finely powdered, two Drams; *Cummin-ſeed* finely powdered, two Scruples; *Camphire*, *Galbanum*, and *Venice Turpentine*, of each one Dram; *Civet*, two Grains: Make them, all according to Art, into an indifferent thin *Ointment*, with the Chymical *Oils of Lavender*, *Aniſe* and *Camomile*, of each an equal Quantity. Keep this *Ointment* in a narrow-mouthed and well-glazed *Gally-pot*, cloſe covered with a *Bladder* and *Leather*; and when you go to angle, take ſome of it in a ſmall *Pewter-box*, made taper, and anoint eight Inches of the Line next the Hook therewith, repeating it as often as waſh'd off.

This *Ointment*, which, for its Excellency, ſome call *Unguentum Piſcatorum mirabile*, prodigiouſly cauſes Fiſh to bite, if in the Hand of an *Artiſt* that angles within Water, and at proper *Times*, and with ſuitable *Tackle* and *Baits*, fit for the *River*, *Seaſon*, and *Fiſh* he deſigns to catch. The *Man's Fat* you may get of any *Surgeons* who are concerned in *Anatomy*, and the *Heron's Fat* from the Poulterers in *London*: The reſt of the *Drugs* are to be had from the *Druggiſts* or *Apothecaries*. And this Compoſition will ſerve you for two or three Summer's Angling.

All Arts, *all* Shapes, *the wiley* Angler tries,
To cloak his Fraud, and tempt the Finny Prize:
Their Sight, *their* Smell, *he carefully explores*,
And blends the Druggiſt's *and the* Chymiſt's *Stores*;

Deviſing ſtill, with Fancy ever new,
Paſtes, Oils, *and* Unguents, *of each* Scent *and* Hue.

CHAP. VII.

Of Artificial, or Dub-flies.

ACcording to Mr. *Walton*, (whoſe Catalogue, though often copied, has never, that I know of, been mended, for the Length of it) there are twelve Kinds of Artificial Flies made to angle with upon the Water. The fitteſt Seaſon, ſays he, of uſing theſe, is in a bluſtering windy Day, when the Waters are ſo troubled that the natural Fly cannot be ſeen, or reſt upon them.

The firſt is the *Dun-fly*, in *March*, whoſe Body is made of *Dun-wooll*, and the Wings of the *Patridge*'s Feathers.

The ſecond is another *Dun-fly*; the Body made of *Black-wooll*, and the Wings of the *black Drake*'s Feathers, and of the Feathers under his Tail.

The third is the *Stone-fly* in *April*; the Body of *black Wooll* made *yellow* under the Wings, and under the Tail, and ſo finiſhed with Wings of the *Drake*.

The fourth is the *ruddy Fly* in the Beginning of *May*; the Body made of *red Wooll* wrapt about with *black Silk*, and the Wings of the Feathers of the *Drake*, with thoſe of a *red Capon*,

pon, which hang dangling on his Sides next to the Tail.

The fifth is the *yellow* or *greeniſh Fly*, in *May* likewiſe, whoſe Body is made of *yellow Wooll*, and the Wings of the *red Cock's Hackle* or Tail.

The ſixth is the *Black-fly*, in *May* alſo; the Body made of *black Wooll*, and lapped about with the *Herl* of a *Peacock*'s Tail; the Wings made of the Wings of a *brown Capon* with the *blue Feathers* in his Head.

The ſeventh is the ſad *yellow Fly* in *June*; the Body made of *black Wooll*, with a *yellow Liſt* on either Side, and the Wings taken off the Wings of a *Buzzard*, bound with black *Hemp*.

The eighth is the *mooriſh Fly*, made, the Body of *duskiſh Wooll*, and the Wings of the *blackiſh Mail* of the *Drake*.

The ninth is the *tawny Fly*, good until the middle of *June*; the Body made of *tawney Wooll*, the Wings placed contrary againſt one another, made of the *whitiſh Mail* of the *wild Drake*.

The tenth is the *Waſp-fly* in *July*; the Body made of *black Wool*, lapped about with *yellow Silk*; the Wings made of the Feathers of the *Drake*, or of the *Buzzard*.

The Eleventh is the *Shell-fly*, good in the Middle of *July*; the Body made of *greeniſh Wooll*, lapped about with the *Herl* of a *Peacock*'s Tail; and the Wings made of the Wings of a *Buzzard*.

The twelfth is the dark *Drake-fly*, good in *Auguſt*; the Body made with *black Wooll*, lapped about with *black Silk*; his Wings made with the Mail of the black *Drake*, with a black Head.

Thus

" Thus, ſays that facetious and ingenious Angler, have you a *Jury* of *Flies*, likely to betray and condemn all the *Trouts* in the River."

His general Directions for *Fly-Angling* are, that your Rod be light and very gentle, conſiſting of ſeveral Pieces. Your Line, eſpecially for three or four Links next to the Hook, ſhould not exceed three or four Hairs at the moſt, though you ought to fiſh with it gradually ſtronger above, in the upper Part of your Line: But when you can attain to angle with one Hair, you will have more *Riſes*, and catch more *Fiſh*. Never encumber yourſelf with too long a *Line*, as moſt do: And before you begin to angle, obſerve to have the *Wind* on your Back, and the *Sun*, if it ſhines, to be before you, and to fiſh down the Stream. Carry the Point or Top of your *Rod* downward, by which Means the *Shadow* of yourſelf and Rod will be leaſt offenſive to the Fiſh, for the Sight of any Shade amazes them, and ſpoils your Sport, of which you muſt take the utmoſt Care.

In the Middle of *March*, (before which Time a Man ſhould not in Honeſty catch a *Trout*), or in *April*, if the Weather be dark, or a little *windy* or *cloudy*, the beſt Fiſhing is with the *Palmer-fly*, of the *natural* Sorts of which I have already ſpoken. But of theſe there are alſo *artificial* Kinds of divers Colours. The *Palmer-fly* and the *May-fly*, it has been obſerved,

obſerved, are the Ground of all *Fly-Angling*. The former are to be thus made.

You muſt *arm* your *Hook* with the Line in the Inſide of it; firſt whipping your Silk two or three Times about the bare Hook: Then take your *Sciſſars*, and cut ſo much of a *brown Mallard*'s Feather as in your own Judgment will make the Wings of it; having regard to the Bigneſs or Smallneſs of your Hook: Then lay the outmoſt Part of your Feather next to your Hook, and the Point of your Feather next the Shank of your Hook; and having ſo done, whip it three or four Times about the Hook with the ſame Silk, with which your Hook was armed, and having made the Silk faſt, take the *Hackle* of a *Cock* or *Capon*'s Neck, or a *Plover*'s Top, which is uſually better; ſtrip off one Side of the Feather, and then take the *Hackle*, *Silk*, or *Crewel*, *Gold* or *Silver Thread*, and make theſe faſt at the Bent of the Hook, that is, below your Arming. You muſt take the *Hackle*, the *ſilver* or *gold Thread*, and work it up to the Wings, ſhifting or ſtill removing your Finger, as you turn the Silk about the Hook: And ſtill looking, at every Turn, that your *Gold*, or what Materials ſoever you make your *Fly* of, lies right and neatly, which if you find they do, when you have made the Head, faſten all, and then work your Hackle up to the Head, and make that faſt alſo: Then with a Needle or Pin divide the *Wing* into two, and with the arming Silk whip it about croſs-ways betwixt the

the Wings; and laſtly, you muſt with your Thumb turn the Point of the Feather towards the Bent of the Hook; then, having viewed the Proportion, if all be neat, faſten, and you have done; or trim off the Superfluities with your Sciſſars.

It is in reality true, what Mr. *Walton* ſays, that no Directions can be given to teach a Man of a dull Capacity to make a *Fly* well: And yet, even theſe Directions, with a little Practice, will help an ingenious Angler in a great Degree. But to ſee a Fly made by an Artiſt, is the beſt Inſtruction; after which the Angler may walk by the River, and mark what *Flies* fall on the Water that Day, and catch one of them, if he ſee the *Trouts* leap at a *Fly* of that Kind: And then, having always Hooks ready hung with him, and alſo a Bag with *Bears Hair*, the Hair of a *brown* or *ſad-coloured Heifer*, Hackles of a *Cock* or *Capon*, ſeveral Colours of *Silk* and *Crewel* to make the Body of the *Fly*, and Feathers of a *Drake's Head*, black or brown *Sheep's Wooll*, or *Hog's Wooll*, or *Hair*, Threads of *Gold* and of *Silver*, and likewiſe other coloured Feathers, both of little *Birds* and *ſpeckled Fowl*; having theſe, I ſay, with him in a Bag, let him try to make a *Fly*, and though he miſs at firſt, yet with a little Practice he will hit it better, and even to great Perfection. When he can once make his *Fly* right, and have the Luck to light where there is Store of *Trouts*, a dark Day, and a right Wind, he will catch ſuch Quantities

of

of them, as will encourage him to grow more and more in Love with the Art of *Fly-making*.

Obſerve then, for a *May-fly*, that you make his Body with greeniſh or willowiſh coloured *Crewel*, darkening it in moſt Places with waxed Silk, or ribbing it with black Hair, and ſome of them with ſilver Thread. The Wings, for the Colour, muſt be ſuch as you ſee the *Fly* to have at that Seaſon, and even at that very Day, on the Water.

You may make the *Oak-fly* with an Orange-tawny and black Ground, and the Brown of a *Mallard*'s Feather for the Wings.

Several Sorts of the *Palmer-flies* are commended, not only thoſe ribbed with Silver and Gold, but others that have their Bodies all made of black, or ſome with red, and a red Hackle.

You may alſo make the *Hawthorn-fly*, which is all black, and not big, but the ſmaller the better; or a Fly with a *Peacock's* Feather, which is excellent in a bright Day.

Be ſure you want not, in your *Magazine-bag*, the *Peacock's* Feather, and Grounds of ſuch Wooll and Crewel as will make the *Graſshopper*. And obſerve, that uſually the ſmalleſt Flies are the beſt. Alſo, that the *light Fly* uſually makes the moſt Sport in a dark Day, and the *darkeſt* and *leaſt Fly* in a bright Day. But whatever the Day may be, you are to repair upon any Occaſion to your *Magazine-bag*, and make your Flies *lighter* or *ſadder* according to your Fancy or the Weather.

In

In a Word, as the great Difficulty is to obtain the Colour of the *Fly* which the Fiſh take at the Inſtant of your Angling, it is impoſſible to give any certain Directions on that Head; becauſe ſeveral Rivers and Soils are haunted by peculiar Sorts of Flies, and the Flies that comes uſually in ſuch a Month of the Year, may the ſucceeding Year come almoſt a Month ſooner or later, as the Seaſon proves colder or hotter.

Tho' ſometimes *Fiſh* change their *Fly* once or twice in one Day, yet uſually they ſeek not for another Sort, till they have for ſome Days glutted themſelves with a former, which is commonly when thoſe Flies are near Death, and ready to go out.

Having mentioned the Angler's *Magazine-bag*, with a Word or two of its Furniture, I ſhall here ſet down more at large the Particulars of what may be uſeful on theſe Occaſions, of which the diligent Angler will know how to make his Advantage.

1. *Bears Hair* of diverſe Colours and Shades; as gray, dun, light coloured, ſad coloured, bright ſhining, and bright brown. 2. *Camels* Hair, ſad, light, and of a middle Colour. 3. *Badgers Hair*, or the browniſh ſoft Fur, which is on ſome Part of the Badger's Skin, after it is in the Skinners Lime-pits. 4. *Spaniels* ſoft Fur and Hair, from divers Parts of the Body, and of various Colours, as particularly all Sorts of Browns and Blacks. 5. Procure from the Butchers, or

or others, black, red, whitiſh, and ſanded *Hog's Down*, ſuch as is combed from the Roots of the Hair, or Briſtles of Hogs of thoſe Colours. And you may get white Hogs Down dyed of any Colour you judge convenient, becauſe it both ſhines well, and is ſtiff and lively. 6. *Sheeps Wooll* of all Colours, both natural and artificial. 7. *Mohairs* of all Colours, eſpecially black, blue, purple, white, violet, Iſabella and Philomot Colours, yellow and tawny. 8. Get Hairs and Furs from the Flanks and other ſoft Parts of a *black Cow*, *red Cow*, and *brended Cow*, and of theſe have brown, ſad brown, light brown, and perfect black. 9. Get Pieces of *Camlets*, both Hair and Worſted, of all Colours you can. 10. You may get moſt excellent Dubbing from *Caſtling Skins* of *Calves* and *Colts*, and ſeveral Colours and Shades off one Skin. 11. *Furs* of Squirrels, and Squirrels-Tail, black Cat's-Tail, yellow dun Cat, Hare's Neck, white Weaſel's-Tail, Mole, Rabbit, Down of a Fox Cub aſh-coloured at the Roots, Fur of an old Fox, Fur of an old Otter, Fur of an Otter Cub, Hair of a Badger's Skin that has been in a Lime Pit, Marterns yellow Fur, Ferret's Fur, *&c.* 13. *Hackles* (which are Feathers about a *Cock* or *Capon's* Neck, and ſuch as hang down on each Side next their Tail) of all Colours, as the red, dun, yellowiſh, white Orange-coloured, and perfect black. Theſe are of eſpecial Uſe to make the *Palmer-fly*. 13. *Feathers* of all Sort of Fowls, and of all Colours; as Feathers

thers on the Back, and other Parts of the wild *Mallard* or *Drake*; Feathers of a *Partridge*, of a *brown Hen*, of a *Throſtle-wing*, thoſe got from the Quills in the Wings of *Shepſtares*, *Ssares* or *Starlings*, *Feldfares* and *Throſtles*; the *Peacock's* Herle; Feathers of a *Heron's* Neck; the Top or Cop of a *Plover* or Lapwing, which will make the black Gnat; the black Feather of an *Oſtrich*, and thoſe of various dyed Colours, which Children and others wear in Caps; Feathers from Quills in a *Blackbird's* Wing and Tail; the black Down of a *Water-coot*, and, in a Word, Feathers of any other Colours and Birds. 14. *Silk* of all Colours, ſmall, but very ſtrong. 15. *Twiſt* and *Wire*, both of Gold and Silver. 16. A Pair of *Sciſſars*. 17. *Wax* of divers Colours.

The Directions already given for the *Palmer-fly* will teach the Uſe of theſe Materials on every Ocaaſion: The Learner will obſerve only in general, that in making any Fly, he is *Firſt*, To hold faſt his Hook and Line: *Secondly*, To make two or three Whips about the bare Hook: *Thirdly*, To join the Hook and Line: *Fourthly*, To put on the Wings: *Fifthly*, To twirl and lap on the Dubbing: *Sixthly*, To work it up towards the Head: *Seventhly*, To part the Wings: *Eighthly*, To nip off the ſuperfluous Dubbing from the Silk: *Ninthly*, To faſten: *Tenthly*, To trim and adjuſt the Fly. I ſhall now add a few other general Inſtructions.

1. In

1. In making *Artificial Dub-flies*, chiefly obſerve and imitate the Belly of the Fly; for that the Fiſh moſt take notice of, as being moſt in their Sight: And let the Wings of the Fly always be of an equal Length, elſe it will not ſwim right and true.

2. When you try how to fit the Colour of the Fly, wet the Dubbing, leſt you be miſtaken; for tho', when dry, they exactly ſuit the Colour of the Fly, yet the Water alters moſt Colours.

3. Always make your Dub-flies on a Sunſhiny Day: And to know the exact Colour of your Dubbing, hold it betwixt your Eye and the Sun.

4. Never let the Tail of your Dub-fly deſcend lower than till you come to the Bend of the Hook, and not into the Bent itſelf, as ſome practiſe.

5. When Trouts often ſhew themſelves at your Fly, and yet do not take it, be aſſured that either the Day or Water is improper for Fly-Angling; or, which is far more probable, that your Dub-fly is not of the right Colour and Shape they then covet.

6. Tho' ſome always dub with Silk of the moſt predominant Colour of the Fly; yet other good Anglers dub Duns with yellow, and Browns with red Silk, and in *September* with violet-coloured.

7. Flies made of the Hairs of Bears, Hogs, Squirrels Tail, Camels, Dogs, Foxes, Badgers,

gers, Otters, Ferrets, Cows, Calves Skins, &c. are more natural, lively, and keep Colour better in the Water, than Flies made of Crewels and Worsted Stuffs, unless you mingle Hair therewith.

8. The Feather got from the Quill of a *Shepstare*, *Stare*, or *Starling*'s Wings, is the best Feather generally to use for Dub-fly Wings. Next are the Feathers got from the Quills of *Throstles*, *Field-fares*, *Black-birds*, and those from the Back of the wild *Mallard* or *Drake*. These latter are used by some for most Sort of *Flies*. If you desire a *black* Wing, use the Feather of a Black-bird; if a *red* Wing, Feathers out of a Partridge's Tail; if a *brown* Wing, Feathers of the *Throstle*; if a *greenish* Wing, Feathers from a Lapwing, or Plover: But many use only the Feathers of *Shepstare* Quills, for almost all Sort of *Flies*, and say they afford great Variety of Shades.

9. The *Palmer-fly*, *Gold-hackle*, *Silver-hackle*, *Great-dun*, *Dark-brown*, *Early-bright-brown*, *Latter-bright-brown*, *Little-whirling-dun*, *Thorn-tree-fly*, *Great-whirling-dun*, *Yellow-dun*, *Dun-cut*, *Green-drake*, *Stone-fly*, *black* May-*fly*, *yellow* May-*fly*, *Ant-fly*, and *Camlet-fly*, are Flies sufficient to be furnished with: But that nothing may be wanting on this Head which can be delivered in Writing, I shall add another and more copious Catalogue of *Dub-flies* to that of Mr. *Walton*'s before inserted, which the experienced Angler may vary

vary and improve according to his own Judgment.

In *February* are, 1. The *Little Red-brown*, made of the *Fur* of the black Spot in a *Hog*'s Ear wrapp'd on with red Silk, the *Wings* of the Male of a *Mallard* almoſt white. 2. The *Palmer-fly*, or *Plain-hackle*, made with a rough black Body, either of *black Spaniels Fur*, or the *Whirl* of an *Oſtrich* Feather, and the red *Hackle* of a *Capon* over all. 3. The *Silver-hackle*, made with a black Body, Silver Twiſt over that, and a red Feather. 4. The *Great-hackle*; the Body black, and wrapped with a red Feather of a Capon untrim'd, that is the whole Length of the Hackle on the Top or Back of the Fly; which makes it ſwim better, and, on a whirling Water, kill great Fiſh. 5. The *Gold-hackle*, the Body black, ribb'd over with Gold Twiſt, and a red Feather over all, does great Execution. 6. The *Great-dun*, made with dun Bears Hair, and the Wings of the grey Feather of a Mallard near his Tail. This is the very beſt Fly this Month, and makes admirable Sport. 7. The *Great-blue-dun*, with Dubbing of the Bottom of Bears Hair next to the Roots, mix'd with a little blue Camlet; the Wings of the dark grey Feather of a Mallard. 8. The *Dark-brown*, with Dubbing of the brown Hair of the Flank of a brended Cow, and the Grey-feather of a Drake for Wings. Theſe Flies are ſome for one Water and Sky, and ſome for another; and accordingly the Size and Colour are altered

tered: Uſe a ſmall *Hackle*, if the Water be clear; or a bigger, if ſomething dark; eſpecially when you cannot know certainly, in this Month or any other, what Fly is taken.

In *March*, uſe all the ſame *Flies* with *February*, but make them leſs. The Names are now, 1. The *Little-Whirling-dun*, made of the Bottom Fur of a *Squirrel's-tail*, and the Wings of the grey Feather of a *wild Drake* or *Mallard*. 2. The *Early-bright-brown*, made either of the Down of a *Spaniel*, or the Hair of a *red Cow's Flank*, with a grey Wing. 3. The *Whitiſh-dun*, made of the Roots of *Camels* Hair, and the *Wings* of a wild *Mallard's* grey Feather. 4. The *Thorn-tree-fly*, made of an abſolute *black*, mix'd with eight or ten Hairs of *Iſabella*-coloured Mohair; the Body as little as can be made; the Wings of a bright wild *Mallard's* Feather. It is an admirable Fly, and a great Killer. 5. The *Blue-dun*, made with the Combings of the Neck of a black Grey-hound. It is a fine blue. The Wings can ſcarce be too white. It is taken beſt in the latter Part of the Month. 6. The *Little-black-gnat*, taken at the ſame Time, and made of the Fur of a *black Water-Dog*, or the Down of a young *black Water-Coot*: The Wings of the Male of a wild *Mallard*, as white as can be: The Body as little as you can poſſibly make it, and the Wings as ſhort as the Body. Some make the Body of the *Cop*, or *Top Feather* on the Head of a *Plover*. 7. The *Latter-bright-brown*, taken from the Mid-

dle

dle of *March* to the Middle of *April*, and made with Dubbing got out of a Skinner's Lime-pits, and of the Hair of an *abortive Calf*, which the Lime will turn as bright as Gold. Wings of the Feather of a *brown Hen* is beſt.

All the ſame *Hackles* and *Flies* that are taken in *March*, will be taken in *April* alſo, with this Diſtinction only, that all the *Browns* be lapped with *red Silk*, and the Duns with *yellow Silk*. The Names peculiar to this Month, are, 1. The *Small-bright-brown* made of *Spaniel*'s Fur; with a light *grey Wing*, to be uſed in a bright Day and clear Water. 2. The *Little-dark-brown*, the Dubbing of dark *Brown*, and Violet *Camlet* mixed; the grey Feather of a wild *Mallard* for Wings. 3. The *Great-whirling-dun*, uſually taken from about the twelfth of this Month, all the Month through, about Noon, and by Fits from thence to the End of *June*. It is one of the beſt Flies we have, and commonly made of the Down of a *Fox Cub*, which is of an Aſh-Colour at the Roots, and ribbed about yellow Silk: The Wings of the pale grey Feather of a wild *Mallard*. 4. The *Violet-fly*, taken only a ſhort Time about the Beginning, and made of a dark *Violet-Stuff*, and a very little dun *Bears* Hair mixed therewith; the wild *Mallard*'s grey Feather for Wings. 5. The *Yellow-dun*, made of *Camels Hair*, and yellow *Camlet*; or *yellow Wooll* of a Blanket, well mixed, and a *white grey* Wing. Others make it of Dun Hair of a *Bear*, and ſome yellow

yellow Fur of a *Martern* mixed, and dub it with yellow Silk. The Wings from the Quill of a Shepſtare's Wing. It is an excellent Fly both for *April* and *May*. 6. The *Horſe-fleſh-fly*, taken beſt in an Evening, from two Hours before Sun-ſet, till Twilight, and the whole Month through. His Dubbing of *blue Mohair*, with *Pink*-coloured, and red *Tammy* mixed; a light-coloured *Wing*, and a dark brown *Head*. It begins to be taken beſt about the twentieth of the Month.

In the Month of *May* all the ſame *Hackles* and *Flies* may be uſed as in *April*, the *Hackles* only brighter, and the *Flies* ſmaller. To theſe I will add ſeven of the very prime Flies for *May*, and indeed all the Year; eſpecially the *Dun-cut*, *Green-drake*, and *Stone-fly*; and then nine of ſmaller Eſteem, which yet are not to be deſpiſed.

In the firſt Claſs are, 1. The *Dun-cut*; its Dubbing of *Bears* Dun Hair, with a little blue and yellow intermixed with it; a large dun Wing, and two Horns at the Head, made of the Hair of a Squirrel's Tail. It is a very killing Fly. 2. The artificial *Green-drake*, which comes in about the Middle of *May*, and is taken until *Midſummer* in mountainous ſtony Rivers, and that at all Hours, is made thus: On a large Hook dub with *Camels* Hair, bright *Bears* Hair, the ſoft Down combed from a *Hog's* Briſtles, and yellow *Camlet*, well mixed together: The Body muſt be long, and ribb'd about with *green Silk*, or rather *yellow*

low Silk waxed with *green Wax*; the Whisks of the Tail of the long Hair of *Sables*, or *Fitchet*; and the Wings of the white-grey Feather of a wild *Mallard* dyed yellow. 3. The *Artificial Stone-fly*, made of *Bears* dun Hair, with a little brown and yellow *Camlet* well mixed; but so placed, that the Fly may be more yellow on the Belly, and towards the Tail underneath, than in any other Part. You may place two or three Hairs of a *black Cat's* Beard on the Top of the Hook, in the arming or whipping, so as to be turned up when you wrap on your Dubbing, and to stand almost upright. This *Fly* is to be ribb'd with *yellow Silk*, and his *Wings* to be long and very large, of the dark-grey Feather of the *wild Mallard*, or of the brown soft Feather of a *Kite*, or of the Feather got out of the Wing of a *Throstle*. Sometimes you may *dibble* with an *artificial Stone-fly* in the still Deeps, in an Evening, if any gentle Gale of Wind or Breeze furl them. 4. The *black May-fly*, which is the next in Order, made in the Body of the black Whirl of an *Ostrich-feather*, ribb'd with *Silver Twist*, and the black Hackle of a *Cock*, or *Capon*, over all. It is a *killing Fly*, but not equal with the *Green-drake*, or *Stone-fly*. 5. The *little yellow May-fly*, of the same Shape with the *Green-drake*, and of as bright a Yellow as can be seen, made of a bright yellow *Camlet*; the Wings of a white-grey Feather dyed yellow. Some dub it with yellow Fur of a *Martern*. 6. The *Grey-drake*, in Shape and

Dimenſions perfectly the ſame with the *Green-drake*, but of another Colour, being of a paler and more livid Yellow, green, and ribb'd with black quite down his Body, with black ſhining Wings, diaphanous and very tender. It comes in after the *Green-drake*, and kills very well. It is made of the whitiſh Down of a *Hog's* Briſtles, and black *Spaniel's* Fur mixed, and ribb'd down the Body with *black Silk*: The Whisks of the Tail of a Beard of a *black Cat*, and the Wings of the black-grey Feather of the wild *Mallard*. 7. The *Camlet-fly*, taken from the Middle of *May* till the End of *June*; in ſhape like a Moth, with fine diapered or watered Wings. It is imitated with a dark-brown ſhining *Camlet*, ribb'd over with very ſmall light green Silk, and the Wings of the double grey Feather of a wild *Mallard*. It is a very killing *Fly* for *Graylings* and ſmall Fiſh.

In the ſecond Claſs of *May-flies* are, 1. The *Turkey-fly*, with Dubbing ravelled out of ſome blue *Stuff*, and lapped about with yellow *Silk*; the Wings of a grey wild *Mallard's* Feather. 2. The *yellow Palmer*, made with a yellow Body, ribb'd with *Gold Twiſt*, and large Wings of a wild *Mallard's* Feather dyed yellow, with the red Hackle of a *Capon* over all. 3. The *black Fly*, with Dubbing of black *Spaniel's* Fur, and Wings of a grey wild *Mallard's* Feather. 4. The *Light-brown*, made of *light brown* Hair, with a ſlender Body; the Dubbing

bing twirled upon ſmall *red Silk*, and raiſed with the Point of a Needle, that the Ribs or Rows of Silk may appear through: The Wings of the grey Feather of a wild *Mallard*. 5. The *Little-dun*, with Dubbing of *Bears* dun Hair whirled upon yellow *Silk*, and Wings of a wild Mallard's grey Feather. 6. The *White-gnat*, with a pale Wing and a black Head. 7. The *Peacock-fly*; its Body of the Whirl of a *Peacock*'s Feather, with a red Head, and Wings of a wild *Mallard's* Feather. 8. The *Cow-lady*, a little Fly, with the Body of a *Peacock's* Feather, the Wings of a *red Feather*, or Stripes of the red Hackle of a *Cock*. 9. The *Cowturd-fly*, with light brown and yellow Dubbing mixed; the Wings of the dark grey Feather of a wild *Mallard*.

From the firſt till near the End of *June* are taken the *Green-drake* and *Stone-fly*; and all the Month the *Camlet-fly*. Beſides theſe the Sportſman may now make, 1. The *Owl-fly*, taken in the Middle of the Month, late at Night: Its Dubbing of a white *Weaſel's* Tail, and a white grey Wing. 2. The *Barm-fly*, with Dubbing of the Fur of a yellow dun *Cat*, and the grey Wings of a wild *Mallard's* Feather. 3. The *Purple-hackle*, made with a purple Body, whipped about with a red *Capon's* Feather. 4. The *Purple-gold-hackle*, made with a purple Body, and *Gold Twiſt* over that, all whipped about with a *red Capon's* Feather. 5. The *Fleſh-fly*, with Dubbing of a black *Spaniel's* Fur and blue Wooll mixed, and

a grey Wing. 6. The *little Fleſh-fly*, with a Body made of the Whirl of a *Peacock's* Feather, and the Wings of the grey Feather of a wild *Drake*. 7. The *Peacock-fly*, its Body and Wings both of the Feather of that Fowl. 8. The *Ant-fly*, with Dubbing of brown and red *Camlets* mixed, and a light grey Wing. 9. The *Brown-gnat*, made with a very ſlender Body, of brown and violet *Camlets* mixed well together, with a light grey Wing. 10. The *Little-black-gnat*, with Dubbing of black *Mohair*, and a white-grey Wing. 11. The *Green-graſshopper*, with Dubbing of green and yellow *Wooll* mixed, ribbed over with green *Silk*, and a red *Capon's* Feather over all. 12. The *Dun-graſshopper*, its Body ſlender, made of dun *Camlet*, and a dun Hackle at Top. 13. The *Brown-hackle*, made of the light-brown Hair of a fat *Colt*, with a red Hackle over all, wrapped with Aſh-coloured or Hair-coloured *Silk*.

The *Dub-flies* for *July* are, 1. The *Badger-fly*, with Dubbing of the ſoft brown Fur of a *Badger's* Skin, that has been in the Skinners Lime-pits, twirled upon red *Silk*, with a red Head, and a ſad grey Wing of a wild *Mallard's* Feather. It is an excellent Fly for this Month in many Rivers, and alſo taken in many Places in *March* and *April*. 2. The *Orange-fly*, its Dubbing of Orange-coloured *Wooll*, and the Wings of the Feather of a *Black-bird's* Quill. 3. The *Little-white-dun*, its Body made of white *Mohair*, and the Wings

Wings of a *Heron's* blue Feather. 4. The *Waſp-fly*, made either of dark-brown Dubbing, or elſe of the Fur of a black *Cat's* Tail, ribbed about with yellow *Silk*; its Wings of the grey Feather of a wild *Mallard*. 5. The *Black-hackle*, the Body made of the Whirl of a *Peacock's* Feather, and a black Hackle Feather on the Top. There is alſo another, made of a *Peacock's* Herl without any Wings. 6. The *Shell-fly*, with Dubbing of yellow-green *Jerſey Wooll*, and a little white *Hog's* Hair mixed. 7. The *Black-blue-dun*, the Dubbing of the Fur of a black *Rabbit*, mixed with a litle yellow; the Wings of the Feather of a blue *Pigeon's* Wing.

The *Dub-flies* for *Auguſt* are all the ſame with thoſe in *July*, and alſo all *Browns and Duns* that were taken in *May*. To which may be added, 1. The *late Ant-fly*, with Dubbing of the dark-brown Hair of a *Cow*, ſome Red warped in for the Tag of the Tail, and a dark Wing: A very killing Fly. 2. The *Fern-fly*, with Dubbing of the Fur of a *Hare's* Neck, that is of the Colour of Fern, and a darkiſh grey Wing of a wild *Mallard's* Feather. 3. The *White-hackle*, its Body of white *Mohair*, and wrapped about with a white *Hackle* Feather. 4. The *Buſs-brown*, made of the light brown Hair of a *Dog's* Ear; the Head black; the Wings of the Feather of a red *Hen*, whipped with Orange-coloured *Silk*. 5. The *Hearth-fly*, made of the Wooll of an old black *Sheep*

with ſome grey Hairs in it for the Body and Head; the Wings of the light Feather of a *Shepſtare's* Quill. 6. The *Piſmire-fly*, made of bright-brown *Bears* Hair, twirled upon red *Silk*; the Wings of the ſaddeſt-coloured Feather got from the Quill of a *Shepſtare's* Wing.

In *September*, beſides the Flies taken in *Auguſt*, is chiefly in eſteem the *little Blue-dun*, made of the Down of a Mouſe for Body and Head, dubbed with ſad Aſh-coloured *Silk*; Wings of the ſad-coloured Feather of a *Shepſtare's* Quill.

Obſerve, that the Feathers got from the Quills of the *Shepſtare's* Wing, *Throſtle's* Wing, or *Feldfare's* Wing, are generally better to uſe for the *Dub-fly*, than thoſe got from the *wild Mallard*.

I will not add any other *Catalogue*, leſt even theſe ſhould be thought more than ſufficient, but conclude with this general Direction, which will always be of Service.

When artful Flies *the Angler would prepare,*
This Taſk, of all, deſerves his utmoſt Care:
Nor Verſe nor Proſe can ever teach him well
What Maſters *only know, and only* Uſe *can tell.*
Yet thus at large we venture to exhort:
Nature *beſt* mimick'd, *beſt ſecures the Sport.*

Of Flies the Kinds, *their* Seaſons, *and their*
Breed,
Their Shapes, *their Hue, (which nice Obſer-*
vance need,)
Which moſt the Trout *admires, where eaſieſt*
gain'd,
Experience *beſt will teach you or ſome* Friend.
For ſev'ral Kinds muſt ev'ry Month *ſupply,*
(So great's his Paſſion for Variety :)
Nay, if new Species *o'er the Waves you*
find,
Try ; you'll acknowledge Fortune amply kind.

End of the FIRST PART.

THE
Britiſh ANGLER.

PART the SECOND.

Containing a Deſcription *of the ſeveral Sorts of* Fiſh.

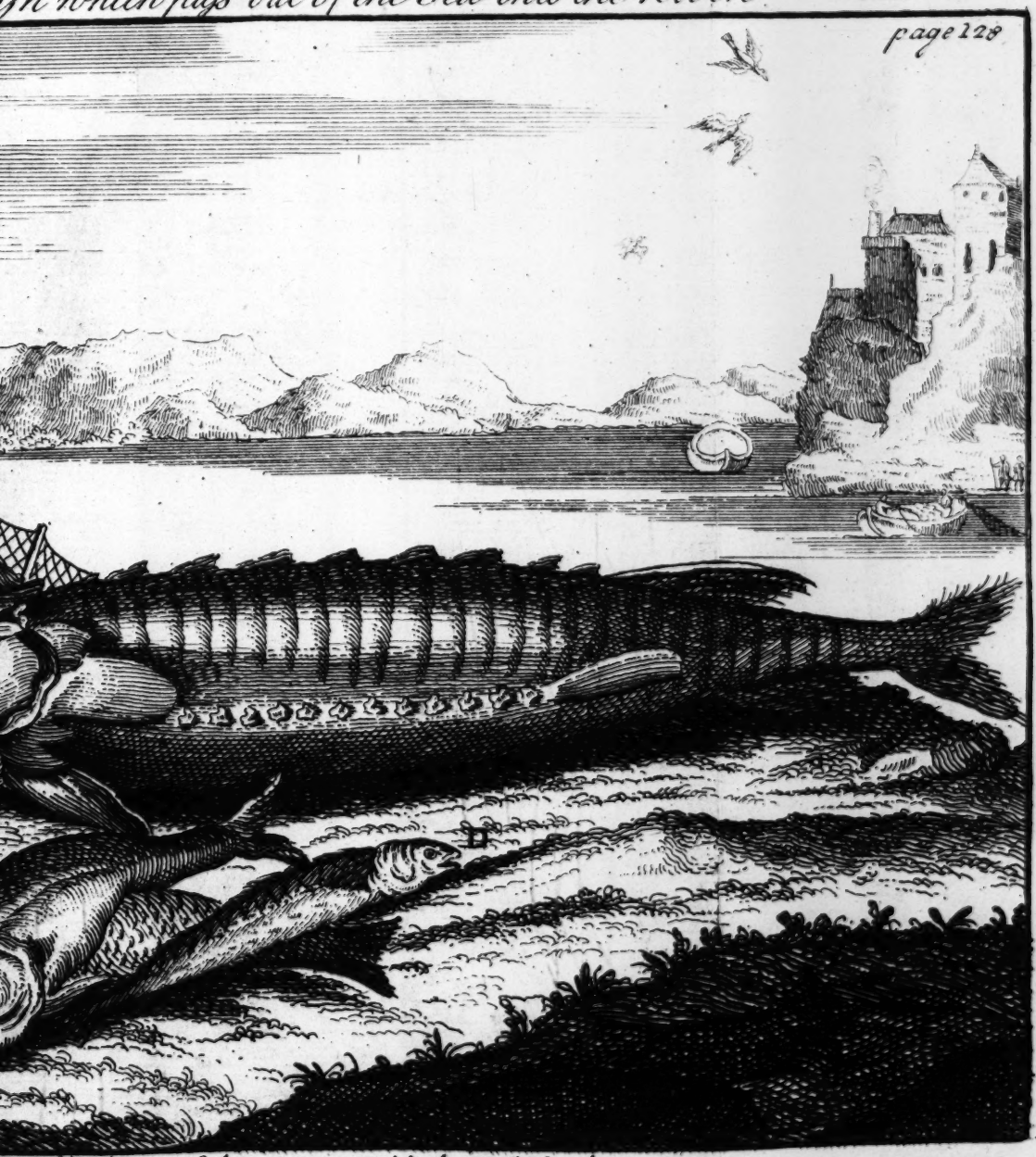
CHAP. I.
Of the SALMON.

HAVING furniſhed my young *Pupil* with Variety of *Tackle* and *Baits*, I now lead him to take a View of the various Objects of his Sport, which he will meet with in our *Rivers*, and upon the *Sea-Coaſts* of *Great-Britain*.

I might begin by dividing our *River-Fiſh* into ſuch as never go out of *freſh Water*, and ſuch as are only Sojourners therein at certain Seaſons, to obey the Dictates of Nature. This

ish which pass out of the Sea into the Rivers

page 128



A Shad B. A Salmon C. A Haddock D. A Smelt

This would indeed be the moſt *methodical Way*, were I to write as a *Philoſopher*; but as an *Angler*, I think it more natural to begin with thoſe Fiſh which are in the higheſt Eſteem, either for *Sport* or the *Table*; leaving the other *Diſtinction* to be made by the *Engraver*, in the *Plate* here inſerted.

The *Salmon* has the Honour of being called the King of freſh Water Fiſh, and is ever bred in Rivers that communicate immediately with the Sea; yet ſo far from it as beyond all Tincture of Salt or Brackiſhneſs. He caſts his Spawn in moſt Rivers in the Month of *Auguſt*, or the Beginning of *September*. Some affirm, that they then dig a Hole or Grave in a ſafe Place in the Gravel, and there place their Eggs or Spawn, after the Melter has done his natural Office, and then hide it with the utmoſt Caution, and cover it over with Gravel and Stones. In this Manner they leave it to the Sun's genial Protection, who by a gentle Heat, which he infuſes into that cold Element, impregnates it with Life, and produces *Samlets* early in the following Spring.

The *Salmons* having ſtaid their appointed Time, and done this natural Duty in the freſh Waters, haſte to the Sea before Winter, both the Melters and the Spawners: But if they are ſtopped by Floodgates or Weirs, or loſt in the freſh Waters, thoſe ſo left behind by Degrees grow ſick, lean, unſeaſonable, and *kipper*. The Meaning of this Word is, that they have a boney Griſtle grow out of their lower Chaps,

reſembling a Hawk's Beak, which hinders their feeding, and occaſions them in Time to pine away and die. It is obſerved, that the *Salmon* may live thus one Year from the Sea: But he grows inſipid and taſteleſs, and loſes both his Blood and Strength, and the ſecond Year he certainly dies. And it is alſo obſerved, that thoſe little *Salmons* called *Skeggers*, which abound in many Rivers which run into the Sea, are bred by ſuch ſickly *Salmons* that did not go to the Sea; and that though they abound, yet they never thrive to any conſiderable Bigneſs.

But if the old *Salmon* gets to the Sea, then that Griſtle which ſhews him to be kipper wears away, or is caſt off, as the Eagle is ſaid to caſt off his Bill. The Fiſh recovers his Strength, and comes next Summer to the ſame River, if poſſible, to renew the Enjoyment of his former Pleaſures. Thus, this King of the Rivers, like other Monarchs and great Perſons, who have both their Winter and Summer Seats, has the freſh Rivers for Summer, and the ſalt Water for Winter, to ſpend his Life in; which, as Lord *Bacon* obſerves in his *Hiſtory of Life and Death*, is not above ten Years. It is to be obſerved, that though the *Salmon* grows big in the Sea, yet he grows fat only in freſh Rivers; and that the farther they get from the Sea, the fatter and better they are.

Though the *Salmons* make very hard Shift to get out of the freſh Rivers into the Sea; yet

yet they will labour harder to get out of the Sea into the Rivers, in order to ſpawn, or poſſeſs the Pleaſures that they have formerly found there. To this End, they will force themſelves thro' Flood-gates, or over Weirs, Hedges, Stops in the Water, even to a Height beyond common Belief. *Geſner* ſpeaks of ſuch Places as are known to be more than eight Foot above Water. And our *Cambden* mentions the like Wonder in *Pembrokeſhire*, where the River *Tivy* falls into the Sea, and the Fall is ſo perpendicular, and ſo high, that the People ſtand in Amaze at the Strength and Slight by which the *Salmon* uſe to gain the Aſcent. The Manner of it, and the Height of the Place are ſo remarkable, that it is known by the Name of the *Salmon-leap*, and is thus deſcribed by our old Bard *Michael Drayton*, in his *Polylbion*.

And when the Salmon *ſeeks a freſher Stream*
to find,
(Which hither from the Sea comes yearly by his
Kind)
As he towards Seaſon grows, and ſtems the wa-
try Tract,
Where Tivy *falling down, makes an high* Ca-
taract ;
Forc'd by the riſing Rocks *that there his Courſe*
oppoſe,
As tho' within her Bounds they meant him to in-
cloſe :

Here

Here, when the labouring Fiſh *does at the Foot arrive,*
And finds that by his Strength he does but vainly ſtrive,
His Tail *takes in his Mouth, and bending like a Bow*
That's to full Compaſs drawn, aloft *himſelf doth* throw;
Then ſpringing at his Height, as doth a little Wand,
That bended End to End, and ſtarted from Man's Hand,
Far off itſelf doth caſt; ſo does the Salmon *vault;*
And if at firſt he fail, his ſecond Summer-ſault
He inſtantly eſſays, and from his nimble Ring,
All yerking, never leaves, until himſelf he fling
Above th' oppoſing Stream.——

It has been obſerved by Foreigners, that there is no better *Salmon* than in *England*; and that though ſome of our Northern Countries have as fat and as large as the River *Thames*, yet none are of ſo exquiſite a Taſte.

As the Age of a *Salmon* exceeds not ten Years, ſo his Growth is very ſudden. It is ſaid, that after he is got into the Sea, he becomes, from a *Samlet* not ſo big as a *Gudgeon*, to be a *Salmon*, in as ſhort a Time as a Goſling becomes a Gooſe. This has been obſerved by tying a Ribband, or ſome known Piece of Tape or Thread, into the Tail of ſome young *Salmons*, which have been taken in Weirs as they

they ſwam toward the ſalt Water, and then by taking a Part of them again in the ſame Place at their Return from the Sea, which is uſually about ſix Months after. The like Experiment hath been tried upon young Swallows, who, after ſix Month's Abſence, have been obſerved to return to the ſame Chimney, there to make their Habitations for the Summer following: Which has inclined many to think, that every *Salmon* uſually returns to the ſame River in which he was bred; as young Pigeons taken out of the ſame Dove-cote, are known to return thither.

The He *Salmon*, or *Melter*, is uſually bigger that the *Spawner:* He is alſo more kipper, and leſs able to endure a Winter in freſh Water than ſhe is: Yet is the Female, at that Time when ſhe looks leſs kipper and better, altogether as watery and as bad Meat as the Male. But as there is no general Rule without an Exception, ſo there are ſome few Rivers in this Nation, that have *Trouts* and *Salmons* in Seaſon in Winter. This is particularly certain of the River *Wye* in *Monmouthſhire*, where they are in Seaſon from *September* till *April*.

The *Salmon* uſually ſtays not long in a Place, as *Trouts* will, but covets ſtill to go nearer the Spring-head. He does not, like the *Trout*, and many other Fiſh, lie near the Water-ſide, or the Roots of Trees, but ſwims in the deep and broad Parts of the Stream, and uſually in the Middle, near the Ground. It is there you are to fiſh for him, and that he is moſt likely

to

to be caught, either with a *Worm*, a *Minnow*, or a *Fly*. But the firſt of theſe is to be preferred, he being not ſo frequently obſerved to bite at a *Minnow*, or a *Fly*. The *Lob* or *Garden-worm* is the beſt, which ſhould be well ſcoured, that is, kept ſeven or eight Days in Moſs, before you fiſh with them: And if you double your Time of eight into ſixteen, twenty, or more Days, it is ſtill better; for the Worms will be yet clearer, tougher, and more lively, and continue ſo longer upon your Hook. They may be preſerv'd longer by keeping them cool, and in freſh Moſs, into which ſome adviſe to put a little Camphire.

It is a Cuſtom with many to fiſh for a *Salmon* with a Ring of Wire on the Top of their Rod, through which the Line may run to as great a Length as is neceſſary when he is hook'd. And to that End, ſome uſe a Wheel about the Middle of their Rod, or near their Hand.

Experienced Anglers have been known to keep a little Box in their Pockets, anointed with two or three Drops of *Oil* of *Ivy-berries*, into which they put their Worms two or three at a Time, half an Hour or an Hour before they hang them on the Hooks, in order to give them a Scent. This Smell is ſaid to be almoſt irreſiſtibly attractive, notwithſtanding what ſome have offered, that Fiſh can ſmell nothing whatſoever. Oil of *Polypody* of the Oak has alſo been recommended, as proper to anoint the Bait: But of this ſee more in the Chapter of *Paſtes* and *Unguents*.

Both

Both the *Trout* and the *Salmon*, when in Season, have, at their first taking out of the Water, and, which continues during Life, their Bodies adorned, the first with Spots of such a *sable* Hue, and the other with Spots of such a lovely *red*, as give them a greater Addition of natural Beauty, than was ever given to any of the Fair by their artificial Paint and Patches.

The Flesh of the *Salmon* is preferred by some before all other Fish, either of the Sea or River. It is very sweet, and affords excellent Nourishment; and therefore, unless eaten moderately, may occasion Surfeits. The *Salmon-smelts* are lighter Food, and eaten as the larger of the *Salmon* Species.

Most Rivers in *England* and *Wales*, where they disembogue themselves into the Sea, and so upwards for several Miles, are abundantly stored with *Salmons*; but those of principal Note, are the *Thames*, the *Severn*, and the *Trent*; the *Lon* at *Lancaster*; about *Cockersand Abbey*; at *Wirkinton* in *Cumberland*, *Bywell* in *Northumberland*, *Durham*, and *Newcastle upon Tine*; the *Dee* in *Cheshire*, and the Rivers *Usk* and *Wye* in *Monmouthshire*.

Besides the *Salmon-leap* in *Pembrokeshire*, there is another in the River *Ban* in *Ireland*. This River's Head is in the Mountains of *Mourn* in the County of *Down*, and it passes through *Lough Eaugh*, or *Lough Sidney*, a large Lake in the County of *Colrain*. Mr. *Cambden* says, it breeds *Salmons* in Abundance, above all other Rivers in all *Europe*; because it

it is thought to exceed all other Rivers for Clearneſs, in which Sort of Water *Salmons* delight. It's almoſt incredible, ſays the ſame Author, what Abundance of *Salmons* are bred in the Rivers *Don* and *Dee*, at *Aberdeen* in *Scotland*, as well as in others on both Sides of that Kingdom. There was a Law in *Scotland*, that they ſhould not be caught from the Aſſumption of our Lady, the 15th of *Auguſt*, to St. *Andrew*'s Day, *November* the 30th, and they are reputed amongſt the greateſt Commodities of the Kingdom; it having been enacted, that none ſhould be ſold to *Engliſhmen* but for *Engliſh* Gold.

The *Salmon*'s Biting Time is at nine o' Clock in the Forenoon, and three o' Clock in the Afternoon, in a clear Water, and when the Wind blows againſt the Stream; and the only Seaſons are from the Middle of *April* to the End of *Auguſt*. When ſtruck, he uſually plunges and leaps, but does not ſo frequently endeavour to run to the End of the Line, as the Trout will. Young *Salmons* are very tender mouthed, as well as *Graylings*; and are frequently loſt by their Hold, after hooked: Therefore ſome Perſons faſten two Hooks together, like double Pike-hooks uſed in Trowling; not made with the Points oppoſite to one another, but almoſt a quarter of a Circle aſunder; and on theſe they make their *Fly*, that if one Hook break Hold, the other may not fail.

For

For the ſmall *Salmon-ſmelt*, the *Brandling*, *Gilt-tail*, and *Meadow-worm* well ſcoured, are the beſt Ground-baits: They will likewiſe take the *Bob* of both Sorts, the *Cod-bait*, *Water-louſe*, and *counterfeit Cod-bait*, in clear Water. For *Flies*, the *Salmon* takes the ſame as the Trout generally does, whether natural or artificial; but the natural Baits are generally taken better than artificial, eſpecially by the ſmall ones. If you put a *Cod-bait* or *Gentle*, either natural or artificial, at the Point of the *Dub-fly* Hook, it will entice the *Salmon-ſmelt*. *Flies* made for the great *Salmon* are better with four Wings, than with two only; and frequently with ſix better than with four. And if behind each Pair of Wings, you place a different Colour from the Body of the Fly, it is much better. The Wings muſt be made ſtanding one before the other, whether four or ſix. He alſo loves to have the Wings and Tail long, and both Body and Wings of the moſt gaudy Colour. Silver-twiſt and Gold-twiſt, are good to uſe in dubbing the Bodies.

The *Salmon* may be caught at Ground, with running Line or Float, the Bait touching, or as near the Ground as poſſible; and ſometimes he bites well below Mid-Water; at *Ground-baits*. He is alſo caught with *Dub-fly*, *Cod-bait*, *Water-cricket*, *Oak-worm*, and *counterfeit Cod-bait*, at the Top of the Water, and by the latter within it. The great *Salmon* will ſometimes take *Minnows* and *Loaches*, and then you may uſe the Ring of Wire at the Top of your

your Rod for the Line to run out, as in Trowling for *Pikes*.

The *Samlet*, or *Salmon-ſmelt*, or, as they are called by ſome, *Salmon-fry*, are only ſo many different Names for *young Salmon*: But there is another Fiſh called a *Salmon-peale*, which, tho' it ſeems to be a Species of the *Salmon*, and is equally good, ought to be diſtinguiſhed from it, as never growing to above 16 Inches in Length. Theſe riſe at the *artificial* Fly, but the beſt Way of taking them is with a *Brandling* well ſcoured. They delight in deep Holes, near the Stump of a Tree; bite freely, and ſtruggle hard: But you muſt not be too eager in ſtriking him, and beſure keep out of Sight. The Time for them is in the Morning and the Evening, and they continue in Seaſon all the Summer. They are principally found in the Rivers of *Dorſetſhire* and *Devonſhire*.

The Salmon *firſt of* River Fiſh *is nam'd,*
Lov'd at his Sport, *but more at* Table *fam'd.*
Well are the patient Angler's *Pains repaid,*
When this fair Leader *is his Captive made.*
Oft' purling Brooks, but oftner greater Streams
He haunts; and basks in Phœbus' *Mid-day*
Beams.
Then, cautious, tempt him, and he'll nimbly riſe
Be ſtrong *your* Tackle, *or you loſe the Prize.*
Large be your Fly *too, with expanded Wings,*
Of various Hues: At this he boldly ſprings.

Y

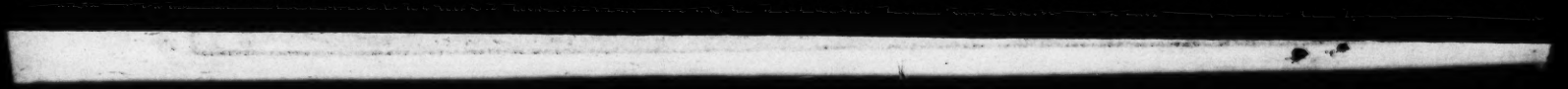
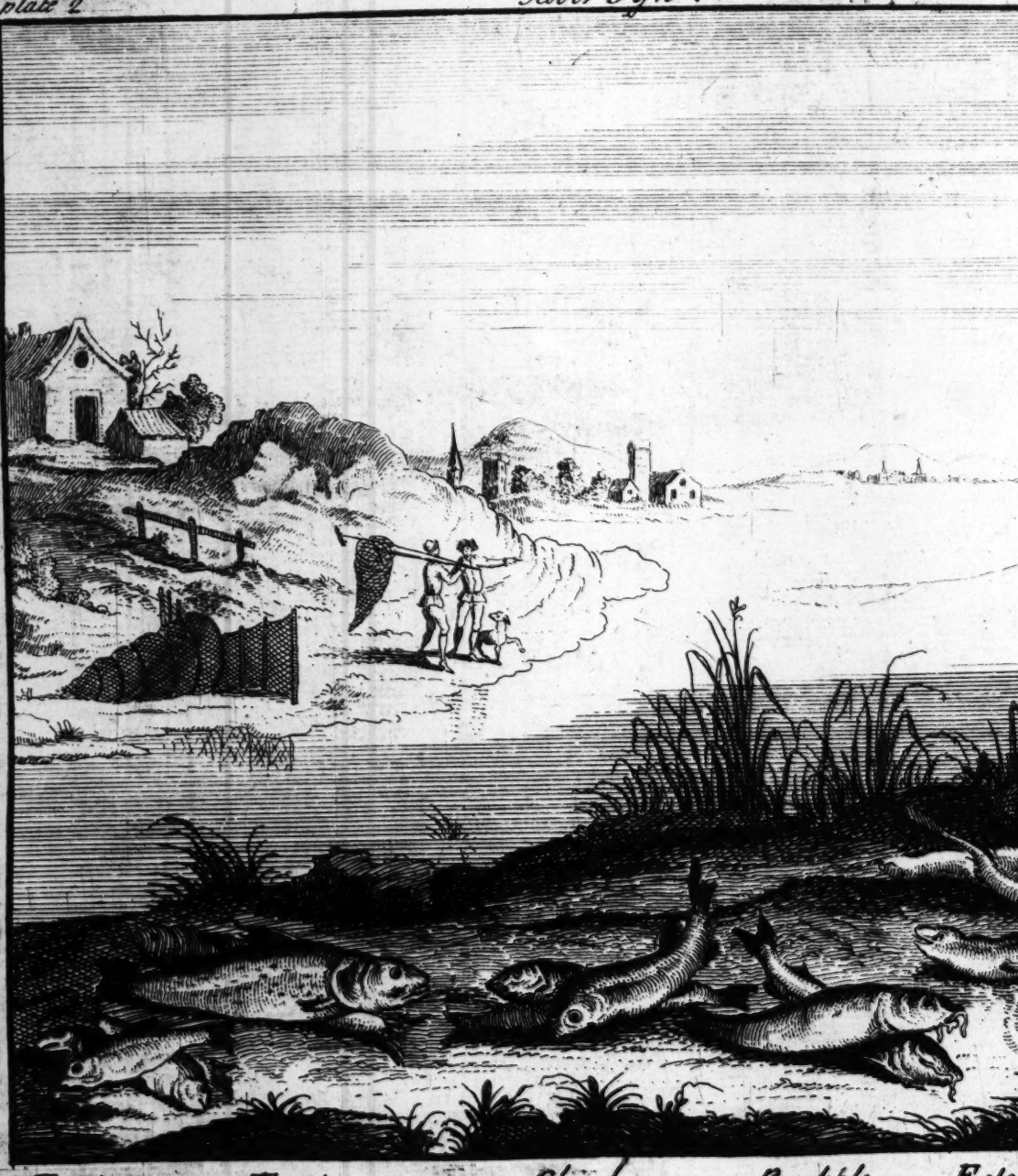


plate 2

River Fish.



Tenches Trouts Chubs Barbels Eels

Yet curling Billows *ſhould aſſiſt the Cheat;*
Quick-ſighted elſe, he ſhuns the fatal Bait:
And clear *the* Current *be, or elſe he feeds*
Low on the Gravel, or the waſting Weeds.
Leſs nice at Bottom, he devouring roves,
And boldly ruſhes, as he boldly loves.
The Lob-worm *ſcour'd attracts him all the Year;*
But ah! deſiſt when ſpawning Time is near.
The Minnows *too his Rage not rarely feel;*
Try thoſe; and, if you can, procure the Reel,
Which freely of itſelf emits the Line,
Needfully long, *and yet ſecurely* fine.
A Trowl *ſome uſe, and ſome the* Rod *prefer:*
They both are uſeful, both deſerve your Care.

CHAP. II.

Of the TROUT.

THE *Trout* is a generous Fiſh, and in the higheſt Eſteem. He is the Veniſon of the Waters, and ſo like the Land Veniſon, that he comes in and goes out of Seaſon with the *Stag* and *Buck*. He feeds clean, is in the ſwifteſt Streams, or on the hardeſt Gravel; and may juſtly contend with all Freſh-water-fiſh, as the Mullet may with all Sea-fiſh, for Delicacy of Taſte. And as there are ſome *barren Does*, which are good in Summer, ſo are there *barren Trouts* that are good in Winter; but there are not many of theſe; *Trouts* being in Perfection in the Month of *May*, and declining with the *Buck*. In the *Leman* Lake

Lake, or the Lake of *Geneva*, there are *Trouts* of three Cubits long; and the *Trouts* of this Lake are a great Part of the Merchandize of that famous City. There are other Waters that breed *Trouts* remarkably ſmall, but in great Number; particularly a little Brook in *Kent* produces them to a Number incredible, and you may take them twenty or thirty in an Hour, but none larger than about the Size of a *Gudgeon*. There are alſo Rivers, eſpecially near to the Sea, that ſwarm with a little *Trout*, called a *Samlet* or *Skegger Trout*, that will bite as faſt and as freely as *Minnows*. Theſe by ſome are falſly taken for young *Salmons*, but they never grow to be bigger than a *Herring*.

In *Kent*, near *Canterbury*, there is a *Trout* call'd a *Fordidge Trout*, from the Name of the Town where it is uſually caught, which is eſteemed the choiceſt of Fiſh. Many of them are near the Bigneſs of a *Salmon*, but known by their different Colour. In their beſt Seaſon they cut very white. Scarcely any of theſe have been known to be caught with an Angle, and when one of them has been taken, it was thought that he bit not for Hunger, but rather in Sport. Many have been ſo curious as to ſearch into the Bellies of theſe Fiſh, to know what the Food was by which they lived; but have found nothing that might ſatisfy their Curioſity.

It has been reported that *Graſshoppers* and ſome Fiſh have no Mouths, but take in Breath and Nouriſhment thro' their Gills: That they

they are kept alive by a *Dew*, and *Worms* that breed in their Neſts, or ſome other Ways unknown to us. If this be at all true, which many queſtion, it may be believed of the *Fordidge Trout*, which knows his Times, almoſt to a Day, of coming into that River out of the Sea, where he lives nine Months in the Year, and faſts three in the River of *Fordidge*. The Townſmen here are very punctual in obſerving the Time of beginning to fiſh for them; and boaſt much of their River on this Account, in like manner as *Suſſex* boaſts of her *Shelſey Cockle*, her *Chicheſter Lobſter*, her *Arundel Mullet*, and her *Amerly Trout*.

The better to confirm this Opinion of the *Fordidge Trout*'s not feeding in the River, we may reflect that *Swallows*, *Bats*, and *Wag-tails*, which are call'd Birds of Paſſage, and not ſeen to fly in *England* for 6 Months of the Year, have been found, even thouſands at a Time, in Hollow-trees, or Clay-caves, where they have been obſerved to live and ſleep out the whole Winter without Meat. There is alſo a kind of *Frog* which hath her Mouth naturally ſhut up about the End of *Auguſt*, and lives ſo all the Winter.

There is in *Northumberland* a *Trout* called a *Bull-trout*, of a much greater Size than any in the Southern Parts: And in many Rivers that have Communication with the Sea, there are found *Salmon Trouts*, very different from others, both in Shape and Spots.

The

The *Trout* grows more ſuddenly than any other Fiſh. He lives not ſo long as the *Perch*, and divers other Inhabitants of the Rivers. After he is come to his full Growth, he declines in his Body, and keeps his Bigneſs, or thrives, only in his Head till his Death. About the Time of his Spawning, he will get almoſt miraculouſly through *Weirs* and *Floodgates*, againſt the Stream; and through ſuch high and ſwift Places as are almoſt incredible. He uſually ſpawns about *October* or *November*, but in ſome Rivers a little ſooner or later: Which is the more obſervable, becauſe moſt other Fiſh ſpawn in the Spring or Summer, when the Sun hath warmed both the Earth and Water, and made it fit for Generation. He then continues many Months out of Seaſon: So that moſt other Fiſhes recover Strength, and grow fat and in Seaſon ſooner than the *Trout*.

Till the Sun gets to ſuch a Height as to revive all Nature, this Fiſh continues ſick, lean, and unwholſome: You ſhall find him with a big Head, and a very lank and thin Body. At the ſame Time many of them are infeſted with *Sugs* or *Trout-lice*, which is a kind of Worm, in Shape like a Clove, or Pin with a big Head, and ſticks cloſe to the Fleſh, and ſucks his Moiſture. The *Trout* never thrives till he frees himſelf from them, which is when warm Weather comes on; and then, as he recovers Strength, he gets from the dead ſtill Water, into the ſharp Streams and Gravel, and there rubs off theſe Vermin. After which, as he grows

grows yet ſtronger, he gets ſtill into ſwifter Streams, and there lies on the Watch for any *Fly* or *Minnow* that comes near him. He loves in particular the *May-fly*, which is bred of the *Cod-worm*, or *Cadews*, and theſe make him uſually fatter and better Meat at the End of that Month, than at any other Time of the Year.

It is obſerved, that uſually the beſt *Trouts* are either red or yellow; though ſome, as the *Fordige Trout*, are white, and yet equally good. The Female *Trout* hath commonly a leſs Head, and a deeper Body than the Male; and is alſo eſteemed the beſt Meat. A Hog Back, and a little Head, to either *Trout*, *Salmon*, or any other Fiſh, is a Sign that that Fiſh is in Seaſon.

The *Trout* delights in ſmall purling Streams, that are very ſwift and clear, running on Stones or Gravel. He feeds whilſt ſtrong in the ſwifteſt Streams, but more uſually on the Side of the Stream than in the deepeſt Part of it, unleſs he be a very large one. He is often found behind a Stone, Block, or ſome Bank that ſhoots forth with a Point into the River, where the Stream cauſes a Whirling of the Water, like the Eddy of the Tide; eſpecially if there be a Shade over his Head, as a Buſh, Foam, or hollow hanging Bank, under which he can ſhelter himſelf. In the Spring, and latter End of Summer, he plies at the Tail of a Stream; but in *May*, at the upper End. If his Hold be near, he ſtays long in a Place.

Though

Though as the Weather in Spring grows warmer, ſo the *Trout* grows ſtronger, and departs from the deep ſtill Waters, into the ſharp Streams and Gravel; yet the beſt *Trouts* often in Summer, in exceſſive Droughts, are driven out of the ſmall ſhallow Streams into the plain Deeps, where you may catch them with Dibbing, or, on a gloomy, cloudy, and windy Day, that furls the Water, with the *Caſt-fly*. There are ſeldom any Store of *Trouts* in Rivers that ſoftly glide through plain, level, and champaign Grounds: For they generally live nearer the Source, or Spring-head of Rivers.

If there be Plenty of *Chubs* in any Rivers, one ſhall catch *Trouts* there only in *March*, *April*, the Beginning of *May* and *September*; becauſe in the four hot Months the Chubs come into the Streams, and drive out moſt of the *Trouts*.

Trouts in their Seaſon are very nimble, and will ſtrive long and vigorouſly for their Lives, ruuning among Roots, Weeds, or any thing to entangle or break the Line. They like a large Bait at the Ground. *Flies* they take moſt at top of the Water, or ſometimes within two or three Inches of it. With *Minnow* or *Loach* they are caught within a Foot of the Surface, and ſometimes lower by Trowling. Some eſteem the *Salmon* to be no other than a *Sea-Trout*; becauſe of his ſmall Difference in Shape, Nature, and Qualities, from the *Trout* that lives continually in the freſh Waters.

In

In the River *Kennet*, near *Hungerford* in *Berkſhire*, there is great Plenty of *Trouts* remarkably large and good. The *Stower* in *Kent*, which runs through *Canterbury*, is ſaid to breed the beſt *Trouts* in the South-Eaſt of *England*. Thoſe in *Wandle*, near *Caſhalton* in *Surry*, at *Amerly* in *Suſſex*, in *Dove*, *Wye*, *Lathkin*, and *Bradford* in *Derbyſhire*, *Ribbel* and *Irk* in *Lancaſhire*, and in *Uſk* and *Wye* in *Monmoutſhire*, are accounted excellent *Trouts*. Mr. *Walton* ſays, that *Hampſhire* exceeds all *England*, for ſwift, ſhallow, clear, pleaſant Brooks, and Store of *Trouts*. The ſame Opinion Mr. *Cotton* hath of *Derbyſhire*, eſpecially of the Rivers *Dove* and *Wye*, and the Brooks *Lathkin* and *Bradford*, which he ſays breed the reddeſt, beſt, and moſt admirable *Trouts* in *England*. But to ſpeak impartially, none can abſolutely determine, in what particular River or Brook are the moſt and beſt *Trouts*; becauſe *England* and *Wales* have ſo many Rivers and Rivulets agreeable to their Nature. This however is certain, that *Trouts* are better or worſe, bigger or leſſer, according to the Nature of the Soils on which the River runs. Pure, clear, tranſparent Streams, running on Rocks, Pebbles, or more eſpecially Flints, are experimentally found to breed and afford the moſt delicate and beſt *Trouts*.

The principal Baits for a *Trout* at the Ground are *Worms*, as the *Brandling*, *Gilt-tail*, *Meadow-worm*, *Tag-tail*, and *Red-worm*; but for a very large one, the *Dew-worm* well-ſcoured.

The two firſt are the principal Worms for him all the Year, both in clear and muddy Waters; the others are for Waters diſcoloured with Rain. The *Cod-bait*, *Clap-bait*, and *Water-cricket*, are either for Top or Bottom, but always to be uſed in clear Waters only. The *Palmer-fly*, or *Wooll-bed*, and all Sorts of *Flies*, both natural and artificial, are for the Top of the Water; eſpecially the *Palmer-fly*, *Stone-fly*, *Green-drake*, *Aſh-fly*, *Fern-fly*, and *Ant-fly*. He likewiſe will take a factitious *Cod-bait* and *Clap-bait*, that are counterfeited with yellow Wax, Silk, Shammy, or Buff, as directed in Chap. 4. of *natural Baits*. Sometimes alſo he takes the *Oak-worm*, and *Hawthorn-worm*, both at Top, within the Surface of clear Water.

The *Minnow*, the *Bull-head*, with his Gill Fins cut off, and the *Loach* eſpecially, are excellent Baits, in a clear Water, for great *Trouts*, in *March*, *April*, and *September*, about Midwater, either to trowl with in the Streams, or, on dark, gloomy, windy Days, in the Deeps.

A *Trout* will alſo take all Sorts of *Bobs*, *Palmers*, *Caterpillars*, *young Frogs*, *Gentles*, *Dores*, the *young Brood of Waſps*, *Humble-bees*, and *Hornets*; alſo *Beetles* and *Graſshoppers*, their Legs and uppermoſt Wings cut off. As the *Brandling*, *Gilt-tail*, *Meadow-worm*, *Tag-tail*, *Red-worm*, and *Dew-worm*, are the beſt Worms for the Ground-Angle, to be ſuited reſpectively to the Temperature and Colour of the River; ſo is the *Cod-bait*, *Clap-bait*, *Water-cricket*, *Palmer-worm*, *Stone-fly*, *Green-drake*,

drake, *Oak-fly*, *Fern-fly*, *Ant-fly*, and *Artificial Fly*, the beſt for the *Trout* at the Top of the Water when clear. Of each of theſe particular Baits, ſee more in the Chapters before referred to.

The Way to angle for *Trouts* at Ground, is with the Running-Line without any Float, but with one or two ſmall Plummets of Lead. They may be alſo caught by Float-Angling at Ground, or at Mid-water by Trowling, and at Top of the Water by dibbing and the *Caſt-fly*; all which Ways we ſhall deſcribe hereafter. But let this be obſerved in general, that when you angle in a clear Water, either for *Trouts*, *Graylings*, or *Salmon-ſmelts*, if you have ſo much Dexterity as to do it with a ſingle Hair for two Links next your Hook, you will certainly catch three *Trouts* for one, againſt any that angle with three Hairs next the Hook. And tho' you may now and then loſe a great *Trout* by his breaking your Line, yet if you had not been ſo ſmall tackled, ten to one he had never bit, and the Number of Bites will compenſate the Loſs. You may fiſh with leſs Hazard at Bottom than at Top with fine Tackle, becauſe a *Trout* at *Fly* ſhoots with a rapid Agility at your Bait, and from you when he hath taken it, with his Head generally downwards; but at the Ground, or Mid-water, he takes the Bait gently, and glides away far more leiſurely. Likewiſe he takes leſs notice of a thick Line at Top than at Bottom, by reaſon of his Eagerneſs. The ex-

cellent Proportion, Shape, Length, true Plying, Gentleneſs, Freedom, and well Mounting of the Hazle-Rod for clear Waters, contributes much to your Succeſs in this Way, as well as your own Freedom from Raſhneſs and Impatience: And if your Hair be ſtrong, you may eaſily maſter a *Trout* thirteen Inches long with a ſingle Hair next your Hook, eſpecially if you have Water-room, and be unmoleſted with Wood or Trees.

From the Middle of *April* till the End of *Auguſt*, a *Trout* bites beſt in a muddy riſing Water, or in a Water that is clearing after a Flood, or in dark, gloomy, cloudy, or windy Weather. His Time in the Morning is from Sun-riſing till about half an Hour after Ten o'Clock, and from about two o'Clock in the Afternoon till Sun-ſet, and oftentimes in the Evening: But nine o'Clock in the Forenoon, and three in the Afternoon, are his moſt conſtant Hours of biting, either at Ground or *Fly*, as the Water ſuits. In *March*, the Beginning of *April*, *September*, and Part of *October*, (for you ought not to angle for *Trouts* from the Middle of *October*, till at leaſt the End of *February*) the Time is from about an Hour after Sun-riſing, till almoſt Sun-ſet, and eſpecially in warm, Sun-ſhiny Weather, and the Middle Part of the Day. *March*, *April*, *May*, and Part of *June*, are his chief Months; though he bites well in *July*, *Auguſt*, and *September*. After a Shower in the Evening, he riſes well

at

at Gnats: And in the Evening of a hot Day in Summer, you may have Sport with Dibbing.

In little Brooks that fall into larger Rivers, where the Tide comes up only in freſh Waters, or Waters a little brackiſh; if you begin at the Mouth of ſuch Brooks, juſt as the Tide comes in, and go up with the Head of the Tide, and return with the Ebb, you may take many good *Trouts*; and if the Tide do not foul the Water, they will riſe at the *Fly*.

In ſmall clear Brooks, if you come immediately after a Shower that hath raiſed the Water, or juſt as any Mill-water begins to come down, and ſo proceed with the Courſe of the Current, *Trouts* will bite eagerly, becauſe expecting the Water to bring down Food with it, they come forth to ſeek it. But in ſmall Brooks or Rivers, when the Mills ſtand, and pen up the Water, little or no Sport is to be expected at Ground, and not much with *Fly*; for the *Trout* at ſuch Time is fearful, and dares ſcarce venture out of his Hold.

When in Angling for *Salmon* or *Trout*, you all Day long have had little or no Sport, next Night, eſpecially at the Beginning of it, till near Mid-night, they will not fail to bite freely, either at Ground or *Fly*, if the Weather be not nipping cold, or froſty.

When you angle for *Trouts*, you need not make above three or four Trials in one Place; for before that he will either make an Offer, or not ſtir at all.

When Rains raiſe the Rivers, and keep them for ſome Time above their ordinary Height, *Trouts* leave the largeſt Rivers, and retire into ſuch ſmall Brooks as are almoſt dry in hot Summers; and in ſuch Brooks you ſhould then angle for them. They generally quit the great Rivers at *Michaelmas*, and go into ſmall Rivulets to ſpawn, and are frequently there deſtroyed by idle and diſorderly Fellows, with groping or otherwiſe, which does more Injury to the Breed of Fiſh, than all the Summer's Angling.

When you angle for *Trout* or *Salmon*, let your Bait drag as little as may be, though for *Trout* it muſt however touch the Ground. Yet ſome adviſe to angle with a Float, that may only keep it near the Bottom without touching; which Method has been found ſucceſsful, but not ſo often as the other, unleſs you bait with *Cod bait*, *Clap-bait*, or *Cricket-bait*. It is a ſtanding Rule, that where you catch ſeveral *Minnows* ſucceſſively, no *Trouts* will be found at that Time: The *Minnows* however that you take, may be made uſeful at a proper Stand: For you may bait either with them or ſmall *Loach*. Take a large-ſized Hook, and put it in at his Mouth, and out at his Gill; then having drawn the Hook two or three Inches through, put it again into his Mouth, and the Point and Beard out at his Tail, then draw your Line ſtrait, and cloſe the *Minnow's* Mouth that no Water may get in, which you may do with a Stitch. Or you

may

may faſten ſome Hog's Briſtles under the Silk, leaving the Points almoſt half an Inch ſtanding out towards the Line, which will keep him from ſlipping back. This done, try how it will turn, by drawing it croſs the Water, or againſt the Stream, and if it do not anſwer your Expectation, move the Tail a little to the Right or Left, till it turns nimbly; otherwiſe you will catch nothing. You may alſo have a Swivel or Turn in this Way, aswell as for *Pikes*, placed about a Yard or more from the Hook, without any Lead on your Line. You muſt continually draw your Bait up the Stream, within half a Foot, or a Foot of the Superficies of the Water. Always angle this Way in a clear Water, and in the Stream, or on very windy Days that will furl the Water, in the plain Deeps; more eſpecially in the Months of *March*, *April*, *September* and *October*. You may angle thus alſo for the *Pike* and *Perch*.

To catch the Trout, *the Angler's chief De-*
light,
Tread ſoftly, and be ſure keep out of Sight,
Or the ſhy Fiſh will baulk thy Appetite.
Nice *as thy Hopes too be thy* Rod *and* Line,
Nice *be thy* Flies, *and caſt exactly fine.*
Nor Rod nor Line ſhould want Proportion fit,
Full ſix Yards *each, if ſo the Stream permit:*
Taper *and* light, *as long, from Hand to Hook,*
If with the Flies *or in a* chryſtal Brook:

Or ev'n should riſing Mud *the Stream infeſt,*
Yet ſtill the finer, *you ſucceed the* beſt:
But here good Judgment *is the ſureſt Teſt.*
Your Tackle *ready, next exert you Care,*
To caſt *your* Line *diſtinguiſhingly fair.*
If on the Surface *firſt the* Links *ſhould light,*
The Fiſh ſpring out, *nor ſoon retrieve their Fright:*
But if the Bait, *ſudden the Wantons riſe,*
Voracious, eager, and become your Prize.
If ſhort he cuts, next Throw *beſure beware;*
He ſaw too much; *the Angler ſtood* too near:
But if no Shadow *on the Surface fall,*
You quickly *ſpeed, or ſpeed not there* at all.
The Worm *at no Time can your Pleaſure fail,*
Unleſs the boundleſs Floods *or* Winds *prevail,*
Or Winter's *Icy Hands the Stream aſſail.*
When milky-white *the thicken'd Current ſhows,*
From Mills, or Rains, or artful Over-flows,
Strong *Lines, Rods, Hooks, and* any *Worms are choſe.*
The troubled Streams *the* treach'rous Snares *diſguiſe,*
And, truſting to his Sight, *the greedy Victim dies.*
But ſtill prefer the chryſtal Brook, *and chuſe*
Arms all genteel and neat, and fit for Uſe;
Nor the long Taper-Rod *and* ſingle Hair *refuſe.*

Your

Your Hook, *when cover'd with the* Brandling's-Tail,
His Head *dejected, will but rarely fail;*
And oft' the Cadews, *manag'd well, prevail.*

CHAP. III.

Of the Umber *or* Grayling.

NEXT to the *Trout* I place the *Umber* or *Grayling*, which are thought by ſome to differ, as well as the *Herring* and *Pilchard*. But tho' they may do ſo in other Nations, thoſe in *England* ſeem to differ in nothing but their Names; unleſs, with ſome, we appropriate the Name of *Umber* to a large *Grayling* only, as the large *Jack* is called a *Pike*. They are of a *Trout* Kind; and in *Switzerland* are eſteemed the choiceſt of all Fiſh. In *Italy* the *Grayling* is ſo highly valued in the Month of *May*, that he is ſold at a much higher Price than any other Fiſh. The *French*, who deſpiſe the *Chub*, value the *Umber* or *Grayling* ſo highly, that they ſay he feeds on Gold, and that many have been caaght in their River *Loire*, out of whoſe Bellies Grains of Gold have been taken. Some think that this Fiſh feeds on *Water-thyme*, and that he ſmells of it at his firſt taking out of the Water; juſt as our *Smelts* have the Odour of Violets at their firſt being caught.

It has been obſerved, that the *Salmon*, the *Grayling*, the *Trout*, and all Fiſh that live in

clear and ſharp Streams, are made by Nature of the moſt exact Shape and delightful Colours, as if purpoſely to invite us to feaſt on them with Pleaſure. Whether this be true or not, it is certain that all who write of the *Umber*, declare him to be very medicinal. The Fat of this Fiſh being ſet with a little Honey a Day or two in the Sun, in a little Glaſs, is thought excellent againſt Redneſs or Swarthineſs, or any Thing that breeds in the Eyes. Some take him to be called *Umber* from the *Latin Umbra*, a Shadow, on Account of his ſwift Swimming or Gliding out of Sight, more like a Shadow than a Fiſh. St. *Ambroſe*, Biſhop of *Milan*, calls him the *Flower-Fiſh*, or *Flower of Fiſhes*; and he was ſo far in love with him, that he would not paſs him over without the Honour of a long Diſcourſe.

The *Grayling*, or *Umber*, grows not to the Bigneſs of a Trout: For the largeſt of them do not uſually exceed eighteen Inches. He lives in ſuch Rivers as the *Trout* does, and is commonly taken with the ſame Baits, and after the ſame Manner. He is very gameſome at a Fly, and, being much ſimpler, is alſo much bolder than the *Trout*. He lurks cloſe all the Winter, but is very brisk after the Middle of *April*, thro' all the hot Months. His Shape is very fine; his Fleſh white; his Teeth, thoſe little ones that he has, are in his Throat; yet he has a very tender Mouth, and is oftner loſt after being hooked than any other Fiſh. Though there are many *Graylings* in the

the Rivers *Dove*, *Trent*, and others of leſs Note, particularly in that which runs by *Salisbury*, yet he is not ſo common a Fiſh as the *Trout*.

Graylings are in Seaſon all the Year, but principally in *December*, when they are black about the Head, Gills, and down the Back, and have their Belly of a daak-grey, dappled with black Spots. The *Grayling's* Fleſh, even in his worſt Seaſon, is firm, white, will eaſily calver, and is excellent Meat; but when at beſt, little inferior to any *Trout*. He is a very ſwift Swimmer, but dead-hearted after he is hooked; bites freely and often at the ſame Fly, if not pricked.

When you angle for him within Water, his Bait by no means muſt drag on the Ground, he being a Fiſh that uſually ſwims nearer the Middle of the Water, and lies always looſe, and more apt to riſe than deſcend. Let your Bait be at leaſt ſix or nine Inches from the Bottom, and to that End uſe a Float of Cork, rather than the Running Line. His principal Ground-baits are the *Brandling*, *Gilt-tail*, *Tag-tail*, the *Meadow-worm* well ſcoured, *Cod-baits*, *Bark-worm*, and *Flag-worm*; and at the Top he may be taken either with natural or artificial *Flies*, or with the *Earth-bob*, or *Clap-bait*.

See how the Umber *ſhoots along the Stream,*
Swift as the Shadow, *whence he has his Name.*

The

The Trout's *Companion both in* Feed *and* Soil,
But ſimpler much, and taken with leſs Toil.
Tho' oft' you miſs him, he again will riſe,
And, after many Baulks, become an eaſy Prize.

CHAP. IV.

Of the Pike, Jack, *or* Luce.

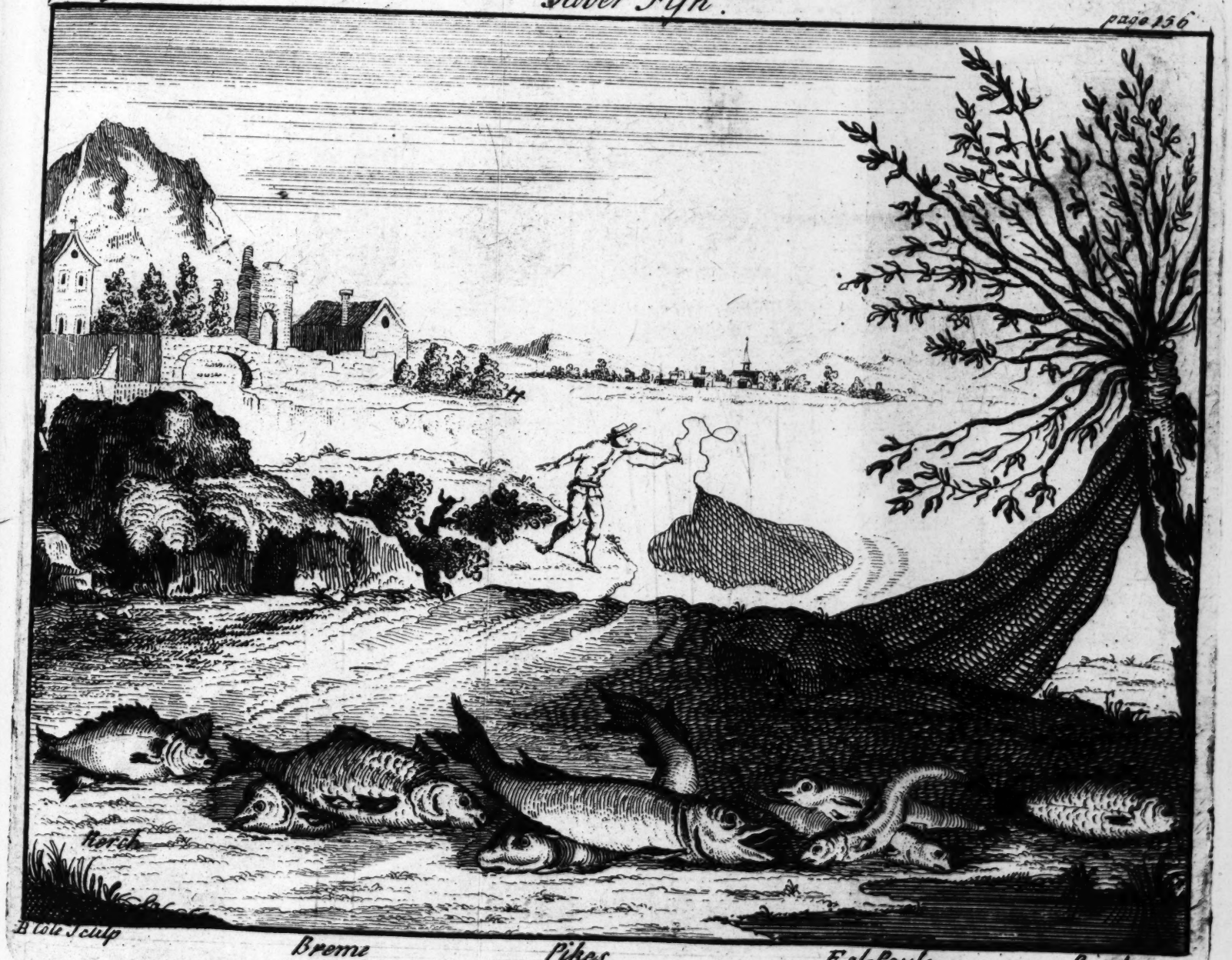
AS the *Salmon* is called the King, ſo the *Luce*, *Pike*, or *Jack*, is ſurnamed the Tyrant of the freſh Waters. It has been a vulgar Opinion, that many of theſe Fiſh are produced without Generation, of a certain Vegetable, called *Pickerel-weed*. *Geſner* ſays, this Weed and other glutinous Matter, with the Help of the Sun's Heat in ſome particular Months, and in Ponds adapted for it by Nature, are changed into *Pikes*. But notwithſtanding the Teſtimony of ſo learned a Man, this Notion of equivocal Production is now univerſally exploded, from unqueſtionable Experiments. There are no *Pikes* bred after this Manner, and tho' ſome of them are brought into Ponds by Ways that are paſt our finding out, we may however be ſure that they have Generation like that of other Animals.

The great Lord *Bacon*, in his Hiſtory of Life and Death, obſerves the *Pike* to be the longeſt-lived of any freſh Water Fiſh, and yet he computes his Age to be not uſually above forty Years. Others think it to be not more than ten Years. But the learned *Geſner*, before

plate 3

River Fish.

page 156



Breme Pikes Eel-Pouts Roach

fore mentioned, ſpeaks of a *Pike* taken in *Sweden* in the Year 1449, with a Ring about his Neck, declaring that he was put into that Pond by *Frederick* the Second, more than two hundred Years before he was laſt taken; unleſs the Inſcription in that Ring, being *Greek*, was miſ interpreted by then Biſhop of *Worms*, a Thing not in the leaſt unlikely. It is obſerved, that the very old and great *Pikes* have in them more of Grandeur than Goodneſs; the ſmaller, and eſpecially the middle-ſized, being by the choiceſt Palates taken for the beſt Meat; whereas on the contrary, the Eel is obſerved to be the better for Age and Bigneſs.

The Figure of the *Pike's* Body is very long; his Back broad, and almoſt ſquare, altogether equal to the loweſt Fins. His Head is lean and very bony; his Snout long like the Beak of a Duck, and his lower Jaw far longer than his upper, having many Teeth, not orderly diſpoſed, but in large Ranks. His Eyes are of a Golden Colour, and very quick-ſighted. His Belly is always white; but his Back and Sides are of a black ſpeckled with yellow, if he be fat; tho' the Sides are white and pale in a thin lean Fiſh. His Ventricle is large and capacious, and his Throat ſhort. Some grow faſter, ſome ſlower, according to the Diverſity of their Water and Food. River Fiſh grow much faſter than Pond Fiſh, unleſs the Pond be very large, and have a good Stream running through it. One ſpawned in a clear

ſpring-

ſpringing Brook in *March*, will be eighteen Inches long the next *March*. A River *Pike* grows faſt till he arrives at twenty-four or near thirty Inches in Length: Then he ſtands a little more at Stay, and ſpreads himſelf in Thickneſs: Afterwards he will be much longer growing to his full Bigneſs, which is about forty-five Inches, from thirty Inches, then he was increaſing to the Length of thirty.

In ſtoring of Ponds with *Pike*, put in all your Fiſh of a Bigneſs; for a *Pike* of thirty Inches will devour one of fifteen. Some grow more in Length, others in Thickneſs, which latter Sort are the firmeſt Fiſhes: For a lean ſlender *Pike*, tho' he ſeem to advance in Length, is commonly in a decaying Condition, by reaſon of ſome outward Wound from the Otter, or ſome ſtronger of his own Kind, or an inward Prick by the Hook, or ſome other Caſualty. Yet even in this Condition, he will be as hungry and greedy as ever.

The *Pike* loves a ſtill, ſhady, and unfrequented Place; ſandy, chalky, or clay Bottoms; ſtill Pools full of Fry; and, the better to ſurprize his Prey unawares, ſhelters himſelf amongſt Bull-ruſhes, Weeds, Water-docks or Buſhes. He often bites about the Middle of the River or Pond, and always about Mid-water; the Bait generally being in a continual and gentle Motion, and never to be leſs than a Foot from the Ground.

In *April*, *May*, *June*, and the Beginning of *July*, he bites beſt early in the Morning, and

and late in the Evening, and ſeldom to any Purpoſe in the Night at any Time of the Year. He bites moſt freely in a clear Water, and a gentle Gale; in ſtill Places uſually, or at leaſt in a gentle Stream. Three o'Clock in the Afternoon is his beſt Hour in *July*, *Auguſt*, *September*, and *October*. In *September*, and all the Winter Months, he bites all the Day long, but always beſt about the Middle of the Afternoon, the Water being clear, and the Day windy. Indeed, both in the Winter and Summer, the chief Sport is in a dark, cloudy, gloomy, and windy Day: But in a muddy Water he bites not well, except after a Flood, when the River begins to clear. *Pikes* ſometimes grow to forty five Inches in Length.

The *Pike* takes all Sorts of Baits, except *Fly*; but his principal Baits are large *Gudgeons*, *Roaches*, ſmall *Dace*, large *Minnows*, *Loaches*, *Bull-heads*, and *Bleaks*. In *July* he may be taken with young *Frogs*, *Salmon-ſmelts* no bigger than a *Gudgeon*, *Smelts* or *Sparlings* that are ſmall, freſh, and ſweet, and well faſtened on the Hook. *Fat Bacon* is uſed by ſome for a Bait for him, in the Winter Months. A young *Trout*, a young *Jack*, a *Perch*, with his back Fins cut off, and a Piece of an *Eel*, are good Baits likewiſe for the *Pike*; but be ſure that all your Fiſh-baits be very freſh and ſweet when you uſe them.

All *Pikes* that live long prove chargeable to their Keepers, becauſe their Life is ſupported by

by the Death of ſo many other Fiſh, even thoſe of their own Species. This, as I before obſerved, has made ſome Writers call him the Tyrant of the Rivers, or the freſh Water Shark or Wolf, on Account of his bold, voracious Diſpoſition; his Appetite being ſo keen, that it is affirmed, a Man going to a Pond, where a *Pike* had already devoured all the other Fiſh, to water his Mule, had his Beaſt bit by the Lips; to which the *Pike* hung ſo faſt, that the Creature drew him out of the Water, and by that new Way of Angling, the Owner of the Mule became Maſter of the *Pike*. Inſtances are even produced, of their having ſeized, in preſſing Neceſſity, on the Feet and Legs of Men or Women, who have gone into the Waters.

But without carrying our Credulity too far, we have been aſſured by thoſe who have kept tame Otters, that they have known a *Pike* in extreme Hunger fight with an Otter, for a *Carp* which the Otter had caught, and was then bringing out of the Water. And it is too well known to be doubted, that a *Pike* will devour a Fiſh of his own Kind, that ſhall be bigger than his Belly or Throat will receive; ſwallowing firſt a Part of him, and letting the other Part remain in his Mouth till the ſwallowed Part be digeſted, and then ſwallowing that other Part which was in his Mouth, till he has gorged the Whole. Like as the Ox, and ſome other cloven-footed Beaſts, take not their Meat out of their Mouth immediately into their

their Belly, but firſt into ſome Place betwixt, where they maſticate and digeſt it by Degrees, which is called *Chewing the Cud*. *Pikes* will even bite when they are not hungry, provided a tempting Bait comes in their Way.

The *Pike* will eat venomous Things, in particular ſome Kind of *Frogs* that are ſo eſteemed, and yet live without being injured by them: Whence it has been conjectured that he has in him a natural Antidote againſt all Poiſon. He has a wonderful natural Heat, that can digeſt and exclude every Kind of Fiſh-Fleſh, without being ſick. He is ſaid never to eat the venomous *Frog*, till he has firſt killed, and then ſo throughly waſhed her, by moving her up and down in the Water, that he may devour her without Danger. *Geſner* affirms, that a *Poliſh* Gentleman faithfully aſſured him, that he had ſeen two young Geeſe at one Time in the Belly of a *Pike*: And there is no doubt but this Fiſh, in the Height of his Hunger, will ſnap at and devour a Dog that ſwims in a Pond, there having been Examples of his ſo doing.

The *Pike* has the Character of a ſolitary bold Fiſh: Solitary, becauſe he always ſwims and repoſes himſelf alone, and never in Sholes, or with Company, as *Roach* and *Dace*, and moſt other Fiſh do; and bold, becauſe he fears not a Shadow, nor to ſee or be ſeen of any Body, like the *Trout* and *Chub*, and all other Inhabitants of the Rivers.

The

The Male *Pike* is better than the Female, which is out of Seaſon a great Part of the Summer. The *Pike*'s Fleſh is whiter, finer, and every way more excellent than that of the Carp. The Jaw-bones, Hearts, and Galls of *Pikes* are reported by *Geſner* to be very Medicinal. He ſays they ſtop Blood, abate Fevers, cure Agues, oppoſe and expel the Infection of the Plague, and are many Ways uſeful for the Good of Mankind. But he obſerves, that the Biting of a *Pike* is venomous, and hard to be cured. His Spawn provokes Stool, and is uſed for that Purpoſe by the Country People.

The *Pike*, being a Fiſh of Prey, breeds but once a Year; whereas other Fiſh that are liable to be deſtroyed, are obſerved to breed much oftner. Thus there are tame *Pigeons* which ſit almoſt every Month, whilſt the *Hawk*, a Bird of Prey, breeds but once in twelve Months. In this the Wiſdom of Providence is very conſpicuous, for its Care in the Preſervation of every Species of Creatures. The Time of Spawning for the *Pike* is uſually about the End of *February*, and ſometimes in *March*, as the Weather proves colder or warmer. A He and a She *Pike*, at this Time, will uſually go together out of a River into ſome Ditch or Creek, where the Spawner caſts her Eggs, and the Melter hovers over her during the Action, but touches her not. The beſt of *Pikes* are noted to be in *Rivers*; next are thoſe in great *Ponds* or *Meers*, and the worſt in Ponds of a ſmaller Dimenſion.

There

There is a wonderful Antipathy betwixt the *Pike* and ſome *Frogs*, the Effects of which would be almoſt incredible, were they not well atteſted. But the following Story, related by *James Dubravius*, a *Bohemian* Biſhop, in his Book of *Fiſhes* and *Fiſh-Ponds*, and from him quoted by our Countryman *Walton*, is too authentick and remarkable to be here omitted. As *Dubravius* and *Thurzo*, another Biſhop, were walking by a large Pond in *Bohemia*, they ſaw a *Pike* lie very ſleepily and quiet by the Shore Side, which a *Frog* perceiving, leaped upon his Head, and having expreſt the utmoſt Malice by his ſwoln Cheeks and ſtarting Eyes, ſtretched out his Legs and embraced the *Pike's* Head, and immediately extending them to his Eyes, with his Claws and Teeth attacked thoſe tender Parts. The *Pike*, full of Anguiſh, glides up and down in the Water, and rubs himſelf againſt the Weeds, or whatever he thought might quit him of his Enemy: But all in vain; for the *Frog* continued to ride triumphantly, and to bite and torment the poor Fiſh till his Strength failed, and then both the Aſſailant and Aſſailed ſunk together to the Bottom of the Water. Preſently after the Frog appeared again at the Top and croaked, ſeeming to triumph like a Conqueror; and then he retired to his ſecret Hole. The Biſhop, who had beheld the Battle, called his Fiſherman to fetch his Nets, and if poſſible to catch the *Pike*, that they might

might inform themſelves fully of what had happened. The *Pike* was accordingly drawn forth, with both his Eyes eaten out: And when the two Biſhops began to wonder at this Spectacle, the Fiſherman declared there was no Ground for their Surprize, and aſſured them he was certain that *Pikes* were often ſo ſerved.

Mr. *Walton* argues for the Probability of this Story from what is obſerved of the *Fiſhing-Frog*, called by the *Dalmatians* the *Water-Devil*, and of the Cunning of ſome of our own *Frogs* here in *England*, who are ſo fearful and cautious of the Water-ſnake, that when they ſwim in a Place where they expect to meet with him, they get a Reed acroſs in their Mouths, which, if they encounter their Enemy, ſecures the feeble Animals from his Strength and Malice, till they get away by ſwifter Swimming.

But to proceed: The *Pike* uſually feeds on *Fiſh* or *Frogs*, and ſometimes on a Weed of his own, called *Pickerel-weed*. I have already taken notice of the vulgar Opinion, that *Pikes* are bred of this Weed. They who maintain it aſſert, that where none have been put into Ponds, yet they have been there found in Abundance; and that there has always been Plenty of that Weed in ſuch Ponds. But this, admit it be true, is far from being a ſufficient Argument againſt an univerſal Law of Nature, which holds in Vegetables as well as Animals, That Nothing can be produced but by the Seed of its own Species. Even the Flies in corrupted Fleſh are no otherwiſe the Effect

of

of that Corruption, than as it ſerves them for a proper Neſt and Nouriſhment. And doubtleſs, by Parity of Reaſon, there will be more *Pikes* found where there is a Plenty of this their favourite Weed, than in any other Place, without the Weed's contributing in the leaſt to their original Production.

As to fiſhing for the *Pike*, you may do it either with a *Ledger* or a *Walking-bait*. We call that a *Ledger-bait* which is fixed, or made to reſt in one certain Place when we are abſent from it; and that a *Walking-bait* which we take with us, and have ever in Motion. The beſt *Ledger* is a living Bait, tho' a dead one may ſometimes catch, whether it be a *Fiſh* or a *Frog*. That you may make them live the longer, obſerve theſe Directions.

A *Roach* or *Dace* is the beſt and moſt tempting of all Fiſh-baits; but a *Perch* is the longeſt-livedon a Hook. Having cut off the Fin on his Back, which may be done without hurting him, you muſt take a Knife, and make an Inciſion betwixt the Head and the Fin on the Back, or ſuch a Scar as you may put the arming Wire of your Hook into it, with as little Bruiſing of the Fiſh as Art and Practice will enable you to do: Then carrying your arming Wire along his Back, quite to, or near the Tail of your Fiſh, betwixt his Skin and his Body, draw it out at another Notch near his Tail: Then tie him about it with Thread, but no harder than to prevent hurting the Fiſh; which the better to avoid, ſome have a kind

of

of Probe to open the way, for the more eaſy Entrance and Paſſage of their Wire: But Time and a little Experience will teach the Practice of theſe Things better than Words; and therefore to thoſe we refer the young Angler.

There are two principal Kinds of *Frogs*, which may be diſtinguiſhed by the Names of a *Fleſh* and a *Fiſh-frog*. By *Fleſh-frogs* are meant *Frogs* that breed and live on the Land; and of theſe there are ſeveral Species of various Colours, ſome being ſpeckled, ſome greeniſh, ſome blackiſh, and others brown. The green *Frog*, which is a ſmall one, is taken to be venomous; and ſo is the *Paddock* or *Frog-paddock*, which uſually breeds and inhabits on the Land; and is very large and bony, eſpecially the She Frog of that Kind: Yet theſe will ſometimes come into the Water, but not frequently. By *Fiſh-frogs* are underſtood thoſe that breed and live in the Water, which are not venomous, eſpecially the right *Water-frog*, which about *February* or *March* breeds in the Slime of Ditches, by blackiſh Eggs laid in that Slime. At this their Breeding-Time the He and She *Frogs* are obſerved to continue long in Conjunction, ſome ſay many Days, and to croak and make a Noiſe, which the *Land* or *Paddock-frog* never does. The beſt of theſe *Water-frogs* for a *Pike*, is the yelloweſt that you can get, for that the *Pike* will ſooneſt take: And that your *Frog* may continue long alive, put your Hook into his Mouth, (which you may eaſily do from the Middle of *April* to

Au-

August, when the Frog's Mouth closes up, and continues so for at least 6 Months, and out at his Gills, and then with a fine Needle and Silk fasten the upper Part of his Leg with only one Stitch to the Arming-wire of your Hook, or tie it gently above the upper Joint to the armed Wire, being careful to hurt him as little as possible.

Having fastened your Ledger-hook to a Line, which should not be less than twelve or fourteen Yards long; you must fasten that Line to any Bough near the Hole where a *Pike* is suspected to lie, or to have a Haunt, and then wind on a forked Stick all your Line except half a Yard, or somewhat more, and split that forked Stick with such a Notch at one End of it, as may keep any more of the Line from unravelling from about the Stick, than just what you intend. Chuse your forked Stick to be of that Bigness as may keep the Bait from pulling it under Water till the *Pike* bites, and then the *Pike* having pulled out the Line from the Cleft in which it was gently fastened, he will have Line enough to go to his Hold and pouch the Bait. If you would have your Ledger-bait to keep in a fixed Place, undisturbed by Wind or other Accidents, which may drive it to the Shore-side, (for it is likeliest to catch a *Pike* in the midst of the Water,) hang a small Plummet of Lead, a Stone, a Piece of Tile, or a Turf in a String, and cast it into the Water with the forked Stick, to hang upon the

the Ground, as a kind of Anchor to keep the Stick from moving.

Or when you bait your Hooks thus with live Fiſh or Frogs, and in a windy Day, faſten them to a Bough or Bundle of Straw, that by the Help of the Wind they may be drove croſs ſome *Pond* or *Mere*, and you may ſtand ſtill on the Shore and ſee Sport enough immediately, if there be any Quantity of *Pikes* in the Place. Theſe live Baits may likewiſe make Sport, if you tie the Line about the Body or Wings of a *Gooſe* or *Duck*, and drive her over the *Pond*. One may alſo faſten them to Bladders, or Boughs, or Bundles of Hay, or Ruſhes, to ſwim down a River, whilſt the Sportſman walks quietly on the Shore, in Expectation of his Game. This ſort of Fiſhing is frequently call'd *Huxing*.

As to Fiſhing with a dead Bait, a little Experience, in Mr. *Walton*'s Opinion, will make any one perfect in it. The baiting one's Hook with a dead *Gudgeon* or a *Roach*, and moving it up and down the Water, is too eaſy a Thing, according to him, to need many Directions. But the following Receipt, which has been eſteemed a great Secret in this Diverſion, he thought, might be worth communicating to the Learner.

Diſſolve *Gum* of *Ivy* in the Oil of *Spike*, and with it anoint your dead Bait; then caſt it into a proper Place, and when it has lain a ſhort Time at the Bottom, draw it towards the Top of the Water, and ſo up the Stream. When it

is

is more than likely that you have a *Pike* follow with uncommon Eagerneſs.

But with all due Deference to the Judgment of ſo experienced an Angler, we muſt affirm that there is much more Art and Experience requiſite in trowling or ſnapping with a dead Bait, than in any Thing he has mentioned concerning the Ledger-bait, beſides that the Practice of the former is leſs exceptionable, and more becoming the fair Angler.

Trowling for *Pike* is a very pleaſant Diverſion, and the Trowl may be bought ready made; only let it have a Winch to wind it up withal. You muſt always angle with it in clear Water, and, if poſſible, on a windy Day. Some prefer a ſingle Hook before the double *Pike-hook*, and bait with a *Minnow*, as well to catch *Perch* as *Pike*.

Your Tackle muſt be ſtrong, your Rod long, and very ſlender at Top, where you muſt place a ſmall ſlender Ring for your Line to run through. Let your Line be Silk, for at leaſt two Yards next the Hook, and the reſt four or ſix Folds of the very beſt flaxen Thread curiouſly twiſted, 20 or 30 Yards long; your Hook double, and ſtrongly armed with Wire, for above a Foot. Then with a Probe or Fiſh Needle, you muſt draw the Wire in at the Fiſhes Mouth, and out at his Tail, that ſo the Hook may lie in the Mouth of the Fiſh, and both the Points on either Side. Upon the Shank of the Hook, faſten ſome very ſmooth Lead, that it may go into the Fiſhes Mouth,

and ſink her with the Head downwards, as though ſhe had been playing on the Top of the Water, and were returning to the Bottom. Your Bait, as before obſerved in general, may be a large *Gudgeon*, a *Bleak*, a *Minnow*, a ſmall *Trout*, a ſmall *Roach* or *Dace*, a ſmall *Salmon-ſmelt*, a *Perch* with his back Fins cut off, a Piece of an *Eel*, a *Loach*, or ſometimes a *Frog* in Hay-time. Your Hook thus baited, you muſt tie the Tail of the Fiſh cloſe and faſt to the Wire; or elſe, with drawing to and again, the Fiſh will rend off the Hook: Or, which is neater, with a Needle and ſtrong Thread, ſtitch through the Fiſh on either Side of the Wire, and tie it very faſt. Weeds are deſtructive to Baits, eſpecially when they are ſtrong and tough; ſo that if you be not careful in tying the Tail of the Bait faſt to the Joint of the Wire, the Weeds will ſpoil it before the *Pike* come.

Your Tackle being thus ready, caſt your Fiſh up and down in ſuch Places as you know the *Pike* frequents, obſerving ſtill that he ſink ſome Depth before you pull him up again. When the *Pike* comes, if it be not ſunk deep, you may uſually ſee the Water move, at leaſt you may feel him: Then ſlack your Line, and give him Length enough to run away to his Hold, whither he will make directly, and there pouch or ſwallow the Bait, ever beginning with the Head. Thus let him lie till you ſee the Line move in the Water, and then you may certainly conclude, he hath pouched

the

Bait, and is ranging out for more. Then, with the Trowl, wind up your Line, till you think you have it almoſt ſtrait; and then, with a ſmall Jerk, hook him, and divert yourſelf to your Satisfaction.

Some uſe no Rod at all, but hold the Line in their Hand, with Lead and Float. Others uſe a very great Hook, which they put at the Tail of the Fiſh, and when the *Pike* comes, they ſtrike at his firſt Pull. Others put a ſtrong Thread in at the Mouth of the Bait, and out at one of the Gills, and ſo over the Head, and in at the other Gill, tying the Bait to the Hook, and leaving a little Length of Thread betwixt the Fiſh and Hook, that ſo the *Pike* may turn the Head of the Bait, the better to ſwallow it; and then, as before, after ſome Pauſe, ſtrike pretty ſmartly. If any Weed hang on your Bait, the *Pike* will refuſe it.

February, if it be a dry Seaſon and open, is one of the beſt Trowling Months. In *March* they ſpawn and are ſick; therefore bite ill. *April*, and until the Middle of *May*, eſpecially if it be cold and windy, is propitious to the Sport, becauſe the Weeds which have lain all the Winter, begin then to erect their Heads. From the Middle of *May* until *September*, it is bad Trowling, by reaſon of the Weeds. From the Beginning of *September* till *Martinmas*, if you are not diſturbed with Rain or Floods, eſpecially the Month of *October*, is

good; becauſe the Weeds then fall and rot, and the Fiſh are fat with the Summer's Feed.

To be a little more particular: When you drop in your Bait, caſt it firſt even before you, then on each Side, and let the third Throw be before you into the Middle: Afterwards, caſt about all Places where you conceive your Game lies, or where you can fiſh without Annoyance of Weeds and Roots. You cannot caſt out too far; but only drop in the Bait, here and there by the Sides, and in Holes that are clear and deep.

Having caſt out a fair Throw, it may be twelve, or ſometimes twenty Yards, let the Bait have a little Time to ſink; then feel it by drawing gently towards you: For a *Pike* often takes at firſt Sight, before it gets to the Bottom; and if you ſnatch it haſtily, you both diſcourage him, and deprive yourſelf of your expected Sport. After you have given it an eaſy Motion towards you, let it have the Liberty of ſinking again: Then draw it in ſoftly; for if you jerk it haſtily, he has not Time to lay hold on the Bait. When the Bait comes near the Bank, play it longer there; firſt deep, eſpecially if in cold Weather; afterwards raiſe it higher and higher, by Degrees, till you have it ſo near the Top that you ſee it gliſter: Then take it out, but not haſtily, becauſe he often takes it near the Top.

When a *Pike* is once tired, he will lie watching for the Bait, and catch greedily at it, if he

he does not ſee you: Therefore keep at a little Diſtance upon the Bank. Sometimes they leap out of the Water at the Bait; but then they are ſo frighted that they will bite no more.

If he takes the Bait greedily at Bottom, and marches up the Stream with it, or ſtrikes croſs the River towards his Hold, he will then probably lie ſtill a little Time, while he is pouching; for you may loſe all for want of two or three Minutes Forbearance. If it hath lain ſtill a while the ſecond Time, and then runs with it, draw your Line ſtraight, and with your Pole give him an eaſy Stroke, and ſo feel him by Degrees, till you come to ſee him. But if he be furious, let him have Line enough, and give him his full Swing, till he is pacified by loſing his Strength.

You muſt be cautious in Landing a great one; for if the River be broad, and your Line ſhort, you may eaſily loſe him: For he will launch out with ſuch Violence, that though he cannot break your Line, yet he will tear out his Hold, or even Entrails, if he be there hung: You muſt therefore have a Landing-Net at hand, to prevent Danger.

If he takes the Bait at Top, and runs fiercely with it into the Deep, and there lies ſtill for ſome Time, without pouching it, your Remedy is to ſtir him a little, and make him run, and be more eager. After he hath lain ſtill, and runs with it again, there is no Drnger of loſing the Fiſh: For when they leave it, they,

commonly throw it up the firſt Time they lie ſtill. Sometimes, indeed, they take it again after they have left it, and play with it more than at firſt, and yet after all leave it. A Fiſh that takes it moſt greedily at firſt, and carries it furtheſt, notwithſtanding often forſakes it. The only Way to be even with ſuch, is to uſe the Snap.

When you have a Bite, and the Fiſh goes down the Stream, it is commonly a ſmall one: But on the contrary, if he ſails ſlowly upwards with the Bait, it is a Sign of a good one. Greater Fiſh bite more calmly than the leſſer; for the ſmall ones ſnatch and run away with the Bait without any Deliberation, whereas old Fiſh are more wary. When the Water is clear, and not very deep, you may ſee him riſe at the Bait and take it, and you will perceive it gliſter, as it lies croſs his Mouth: Thus may you know when he hath pouched, and your Time to ſtrike.

When you have ſtruck him, be ſure to have your Line ready and ſlack, that he may take as much Liberty as he will: For when he finds himſelf trapan'd with the Hook, he will uſe all his Might and Cunning to get looſe. As you feel him come eaſily towards you, you may be ſtill drawing, till you feel him make reſiſtance again: Then let him have his Swing till his Fury is over; after which gather your Line to you again till he ſtarts away; and if you can get him to the Top, it will the ſooner tire him: For the more he ſtrives and throws him-

himſelf from you, the ſooner will he be weary. After this Manner, by drawing him up, and letting him looſe again, you may tame him till you bring him to Shore, and land him by the Net. But in caſe you be unprovided with this Convenience, beware of attempting to take him out by the Back or Tail, but graſp him by the Head, and put your Fingers into his Eyes. If you lay hold by his Gills, your Fingers may be injured with his Bites, which are venomous.

When you *ſnap* for the *Pike*, you muſt give him leave to run a little, and then ſtrike; but always ſtrike the contrary Way to that which he runs. A double-ſpring Hook is principally, if not only uſeful in this Way of Angling, and much to be preferred before all Hooks. Angling with the *Trowl* is a ſurer, at leaſt a more eaſy Way for a Learner to practiſe, than the Snap: Beſides, the Snap is chiefly uſeful to take a *Pike*, which often pricking with the Trowl hath made wary and cunning. Such a one is beſt taken at Snap, and the fitteſt Time for this Exerciſe is in *March*, when the *Pike* bites ill, becauſe they ſpawn then, and are ſick.

For this Way of Angling, make a Hole with the Point of your Hook or Probe, in the Fiſh's Side with which you bait, as near the Middle as you can: Put in your armed Wire, and draw it out at the Mouth, which afterwards ſew up with a Needle and Thread. Others uſe the Probe to draw the arming Wire under

the Skin only, and out at the Bone behind the Gills; then again under the Gills, and out at the Mouth. This latter Way is by many thought the beſt, becauſe there is only the Skin to hinder the drawing and piercing of the Hook: Whereas in the former Way, if the *Pike* hold faſt, all the Fleſh on the Outſide of the Fiſh will be drawn into a Heap or Lump, ſo thick, that the Hook can hardly reach thro' it to pierce the *Pike*'s Chaps.

Obſerve that tho' the *Pike* hath fed to that Exceſs that he cannot gorge your Bait, yet will he riſe and make many Offers with ſuch a Good-will, that you may often catch him with the Snap.

In angling for the *Pike*, after he hath taken your Bait, if he move ſlowly, and make no Stop, give him Time, and you will ſeldom miſs him. Caſt not the Bait in the ſame Place above once, or twice at moſt; for he commonly takes the Bait at the firſt or ſecond Throw. If he be ſtill after he hath taken the Bait, gently move your Hand, to try which Way his Head lieth. If you cannot diſcover that, then ſtrike directly upwards; otherwiſe, inſtead of hooking him, you may pluck the Bait out of his Mouth. If he take it upon the Top of the Water, and lie ſtill, you ſee which Way his Head lieth, and may order yourſelf accordingly.

At the Snap your Tackle muſt be ſtronger than for the Trowl, in regard you muſt ſtrike much more forceably. Your beſt Lines are made

made of green or sky-coloured Silk. Next are those of green Thread or Hemp. Fasten your Swivel to the End of the Line; (for you must use a Swivel both at Trowl and Snap) and hook your armed Wire upon the Swivel. Both at Snap and with Trowl, cut away one of the Fins of the Bait close at the Gills; and another behind the Vent, on the contrary Side: The Bait will play the better.

In casting with the Trowl or at Snap, be sure to raise your Hand a little when you see the Bait ready to fall into the Water. This will prevent the Bait's dashing violently into the Water in its Fall, which frights the *Pike*, tho' he be a bold Fish. After your Bait is in, let it sink a little; then draw it towards you, near at the Top; then let it sink again, and so on.

Make your Lead for the Trowl and Snap four-square, and much thicker and shorter than most use. The Square will keep the Hook in the same Place as you set it, and the thick short Lead sinks him with his Head downwards, so that he will not shoot slope-wise, as when the Lead is long.

A larger Bait is most inviting to the *Pike*, but the lesser takes him more surely, being soonest gorged, and the Hook certainly taken in his Mouth both at Snap and Trowl. Two or three Baits will serve all the Day: Put them on before you go to angle, and use one till it be Water-sopt.

Uſe a large white *Minnow*, or large *Loach*, put on with the Hook in his Mouth, to angle for a *Pike* as you do for a *Trout*; and let your Hook be ſmall. Never uſe a great Hook with a ſmall Bait, nor a great Bait with a ſmall Hook. You may catch both *Pike* and *Perch*, if you trowl with a *Minnow* or *Loach*, or ſmall *Gudgeon*, and have not too big a Hook. When the Water is tranſparent, and the Day clear and bright, a large *Gudgeon* is the beſt Bait for *Pike*: But if the Day be dark or cloudy, *Roach*, *Dace*, or a *Bleak* new taken, are the beſt Baits that can be made uſe of.

To angle with a *Minnow*, get a ſingle Hook, long and ſlender in the Shank; but Lead upon it, as thick near the Bent as will go into the *Minnow*'s Mouth: Place the Point of the Hook directly up the Face of the Fiſh: Let the Rod be as long as you can handſomely manage, with a Line of the ſame Length; caſt up and down, and manage it as when you trowl with any other Bait. If, when the *Pike* hath taken it, he run to the End of the Line before he hath gorged it, do not ſtrike, but hold ſtill only, and he will return back and ſwallow it. Some eſteem a *Minnow* the beſt with a Trowl, eſpecially if you uſe a Swivel.

I will juſt mention two other Ways of taking *Pikes*, becauſe they are frequently practiſed, tho' not ſo much by the fair Angler as the two former: Theſe are called *Snaring* and *Hook-*

Hooking. In *May*, *June*, and *July*, in a clear, calm, hot, gleamy Day, *Pikes* ſoar on the Water's Surface, or near it: Then fix a Snare or Running-nooſe of Wire to the End of a ſtrong Packthread, a Yard and a half long, and the other End of the Packthread to a long Pole that is manageable. Your Snare being open, you may obſerve *Jacks* lie on the Top of the Water, and eaſily put the Nooſe over them, and, with a quick and ſmart Jerk, hoiſt them to Land.

Or you may, at that Time, take a Line of ſeven or eight Foot, and arm to it a Hook of the largeſt Size, having the Shank leaded neatly, that the Weight may guide it at Pleaſure, and you may ſtrike the *Pike* with the bare Hook when they go a Frogging into Ditches, and you ſee them ſoaring on the Superficies of the Water. Or you may whip four Hooks to ſuch a Line, the Points a Quarter of a Circle diſtant from each other, and all whipt together.

To catch that Nimrod *of the Streams the* Pike,
Angler *be cautious, nor too raſhly ſtrike.*
Rods, Lines, *and* Hooks, *are often found* too ſmall,
The Tyrant's ſtrong, *and rudely forces* all.
A ſtiff, neat, nine Foot Pole *you muſt prepare,*
Which may in ſev'ral Things repay your Care:

Whether

Whether the ſtruggling Prize *your Caution ask,*
And Landing-Nets *fix'd to't facilitate your Taſk;*
Or with fix'd Rings, *you further this Deſign,*
By caſting finely out your Bait and Line.
With this have always Hooks *ſecurely* ſtrong,
Well-wir'd, *and join'd to* Lines *proportionably* long.
A Dace, *a* Gudgeon, *or a* Stone-Loach *take,*
Or, wanting theſe, an happy Trial make
Of ſomething elſe of the leſs uſual Kind;
As Frogs, *or* Eels, *or* Garbadge; *for you'll find*
His greedy Appetite *will leave your Doubts behind.*
Let but your Baits *be* good, *your* Lines *be* ſtrong,
Without Succeſs *you cannot tempt him long:*
Then give him Gorging Time, *and you're ſecure;*
He rarely leaves his Prize, *or quits his* Pow'r.
Perhaps the Day *is* hot, *no Breeze of* Wind
Is to your Hope and vain Endeavours kind:
Riſe early *then, or try your Fortune* late;
Or elſe till more auſpicious Minutes *wait.*
When keen *the* Winds *from any Quarter blow,*
The Tyrant ſeldom waits a ſecond Throw.
But if the Streams you uſe are thinly ſtor'd,
And therefore ſmall's the Paſtime they afford;
You then prepare a handſome taper Pole,
As long, *if not ſtill* longer *than the* Trowl;
To this a thin, but ſtrong well-twiſted Line
Affix, and Hooks *both* large, *and* fit *for your Deſign.*

By

By frequent Bobbing *you deceive his Eyes,*
And if your Tackling *hold, he's certainly your* Prize.

CHAP. V.

Of the PERCH.

THE *Perch* is a very good Fiſh, and bites boldly. He is one of thoſe Fiſhes of Prey, that, like the *Pike* and *Trout*, carries his Teeth in his Mouth, which is very large. He dares venture to attack and devour ſeveral other Kinds of Fiſh; has a riſing or Hog-Back, armed with ſharp and ſtiff Briſtles; all his Skin covered over with thick, dry, hard Scales; and his Back, which few other Fiſh have, adorned with two Fins. The *Perch* is ſo bold, that he will ſeize one of his own Kind, even more readily than the *Pike*, that Wolf of the freſh Waters. He is much eſteemed in *Italy*, and eſpecially when ſmall. *Geſner* prefers the *Perch* and *Pike* before the *Trout*, or any freſh Water Fiſh. The *Germans* ſay proverbially, *More wholeſome than a* Perch *of the* Rhine; and indeed the River *Perch* is ſo wholeſome, that Phyſicians allow him to be eaten by Perſons in Fevers, and by Women in Child-bed. He is deep-bodied, and by Naturaliſts eſteemed very nutritive.

They abound more in the River *Po* in *Italy*, and in the Rivers of *England*, than in any other Parts. They have a Stone in their Brain, which

which in Foreign Countries is ſold by the Apothecaries, who hold it to be very medicinal againſt the Stone in the Reins. Theſe are ſome of the Commendations beſtowed upon the freſh Water *Perch*; yet many affirm the Sea-Perch, which is known by having but one Fin on his Back, to be a much better Fiſh.

The *Perch* grows ſlowly, yet will ſometimes increaſe to be almoſt two Foot long: Though his ordinary Length is not above twelve or fourteen Inches. When attacked by the *Pike*, to terrify his Enemy, and ſave himſelf, the *Perch* will briſtle up his Fins as a Turkey-Cock ſometimes erects his Tail; on which Account the *Pike* never meddles with him, unleſs preſſed by extreme Hunger.

The *Perch* loves a gentle Stream of a reaſonable Depth, and eſpecially cloſe by a hollow Bank: And though *Salmon*, *Trout*, and *Perch* delight in clear and ſwift Rivers; pebbly, gravelly Bottoms, or green Weeds; yet Perches are ſometimes found, but not in ſuch Plenty and Goodneſs, in ſlow, ſlimy, and muddy Rivers, as about *Oxford*.

The *Perch* will not bite at all Seaſons of the Year: He is very abſtemious in Winter; yet even then he will bite in the Midſt of the Day, if it be warm: It is to be obſerved indeed, that all Fiſh bite beſt about the Midſt of a warm Day in Winter. In Summer he will bite all the Day long, in cool, gloomy, or windy Weather; yet principally from ſeven o'Clock in the Forenoon, till after ten, and from about

bout two in the Afternoon till about ſix, and ſometimes later, eſpecially in hot Weather.

If there be thirty or forty of them in a Hole, they may be at one Standing all catched one after another. They are not like the ſolitary *Pike*, but love to accompany one another, and march together in Troops; as all Fiſh that have Scales are obſerved to do.

The *Perch* is very ſtrong, and will contend hard and long for his Life. He ſpawns but once a Year, and that about *February* or *March*.

He will bite at a *Worm*, a *Minnow*, or a little *Frog*; of which you may find many in Hay-time: Of *Worms*, the *Lobworm*, or the *Brandling*, I take to be the beſt, being well ſcoured in Moſs or Fennel; and next the *Worm* that lies under a Cow-turd with a blewiſh Tail. He will alſo take the *Red-worm* and the *Dew-worm*. If you angle for a *Perch* with a *Minnow*, it is beſt your Bait be alive, ſticking your Hook through his Back Fin: Or a *Minnow* may be hooked in his upper Lip, and ſuffered to ſwim up and down about Mid-water, or a little lower, ſtill keeping him to about that Depth, by a Float, which ought not to be a very little one. The ſame Method is to be obſerved when you fiſh with a ſmall *Frog*, your Hook being faſtened through the Skin of his Leg, towards the upper Part of it.

When the *Perch* bites, be ſure you give him Time enongh to pouch the Hook, for there was ſcarce ever any Angler that gave him too much. Some, in angling for *Perch*, will

ſuffer

ſuffer their Bait to touch the Ground, eſpecially when they fiſh with a *Worm*. The Turning of the Water, or Eddy, in a good Gravel-Scour, is an excellent Place for Sport. Your Tackle ſhould be ſtrong, becauſe in fiſhing for *Perch*, *Pikes* are often taken. Bait the Ground over Night with *Lob-worms* cut in Pieces.

When you uſe the *Minnow*, it will be convenient to have your Hook whipped to a Link of ſmall *Braſs Wire*, leſt you ſhould meet with the *Pike*. A Piece cut from a *Roach* or *Dace* is a tolerable Bait, when you want others.

The following Directions in angling for the *Perch* with a *Worm*, may be worth obſerving: In *March* uſe the *Red-worm* at the Bottom: In *April*, the *Oak-worm*, a *young Frog* with his Feet cut off, or a *Red Snail*: In *May*, the *Dock-worm*, or the Bait that breeds on the *Oſier-Leaf*, the *Oak-Leaf*, and the *Hawthorn*: In *June*, the *Red-worm* with the Head cut off, and a *Cod-bait* put before it, or the *Dor*: In *July* the large *Graſshopper*, or *Dunghil-Grub*: In *Auguſt*, and the following Months, *Red-worms*, or *Brandlings*.

Perch *muddy* Moats *and* ſtanding Waters *love*,
And in the Chryſtal Currents *rarely rove*;
Or when they do, ſo nice *they are and* coy,
The Angler's Skill and Patience they defy.
In gentle Rains, *or after* violent Show'rs,
He boldly roams, and eagerly devours.
Beneath impending Willows *oft he lies,*
Watchful to take, or chewing on his Prize:

Deep

Deep Pits *he loves too; but you rarelieſt fail*
Where whirling Eddies *rapidly prevail:*
Yet ſoon in April, *after ſpawning Hours,*
He haunts, and freely bites upon the Scours.
But large *your* Float *muſt be, your* Tackle ſtrong;
Nor ſhould you think his ſlow Digeſtion *long:*
For, if he bite, *his Prize he will not leave,*
Too greedy *much the Angler to deceive.*
Nice he is not; but ſeldom can you fail,
With Minnow, Lob-worm, *or the* blewiſh Tail:
Nay, Roach, *or* Dace *in little Pieces cut,*
And on the Hook with careful Safety put,
Have after various Trial ſlaughter'd more,
Than all the long Preparatives before.
Nor oft' with Perch *alone this Art is bleſt;*
For Pike *and* Chub *have ſtrenuouſly preſt*
To ſeize the ſavoury Bit *before the reſt.*

CHAP. VI.

Of the CARP.

BESIDES the kingly *Salmon* and Tyrant *Pike*, we have the *Carp*, a beautiful, good, and very ſubtle Fiſh, which has the Title of *Queen of the Rivers*. The *Carp* was not at firſt bred, but has now been long in *England*, and is become naturalized. One Mr. *Maſcal*, a Gentlemen of *Plumſted* in *Suſſex*, is ſaid to have firſt brought them over in the Reign

Reign of King *Henry* VIII. To which this antient Diſtich agrees:

Hops and Turkies, Carps *and Beer*,
Came into England *all in a Year.*

As of Sea-fiſh the *Herring* dies ſooneſt out of the Water, and of freſh Water Fiſh the *Trout*; ſo the *Carp*, next to the *Eel*, endures the moſt Severity, (exept Cold) and lives longeſt out of his own Element.

Carps and *Loaches* are obſerved to breed ſeveral Months in the Year, contrary to the Cuſtom of other Fiſh. You ſhall ſcarce ever take a Male *Carp* without a Melt, or a Female without a Roe or Spawn, and generally pretty large, eſpecially in the Summer Seaſon. They breed more naturally in Ponds than in running Waters; but thoſe that live in Rivers are taken to be much the better Meat. There are ſome Ponds indeed, in which *Carps* will not breed, eſpecially thoſe that are cold; but where the Situation ſuits, they multiply innumerably. Some affirm, they breed no leſs than ſix Times in a Year, if there are no *Pikes* nor *Perch* to devour their Spawn. They caſt it upon Graſs, or Flags, or Weeds, where it lies ten or twelve Days before it be enlivened.

If the *Carp* have Water-Room and good Feed, he will grow to a very great Bigneſs and Length: There have been ſome ſeen conſiderably above a Yard long: And in the Lake *Lurian* in *Italy*, it is reported *Carps* have

have thriven to be more than fifty Pounds Weight. For as the *Crocodile* is very long-lived, and all that Life continues to thrive in Bigneſs, the ſame has been remarked of *Carps*, eſpecially in ſome Places. And as their Increaſe and Growth are very wonderful, ſo their Decay is often very myſterious. For when ſixty or more large *Carps* have been put into ſeveral Ponds near a Houſe, where by reaſon of the Stakes in the Water, and the Owner's conſtant Vicinity, it was impoſſible they ſhould be ſtole away from him; at emptying the Pond, after three or four Years, there has been found never a young *Carp* remaining. This is attributed, and in all Appearance juſtly, to their being deſtroyed by the Frogs, as we obſerved of *Pikes*.

Though the Age of *Carps* is by Sir *Francis Bacon* obſerved to be but ten Years; *Geſner* ſays, a *Carp* has been known to live in the *Palatinate* above a hundred Years: And, contrary to the *Pike*, all *Carps* are the better for Age and Bigneſs. Their Tongues are excellent Meat. The *Carp* is to be reckoned among thoſe leather-mouthed Fiſh which have their Teeth in their Throat, and for that Reaſon is very ſeldom loſt by breaking his Hold, if the Hook be once ſtuck into his Chaps.

At the Time of their Breeding, which is in Summer, when the Sun hath warmed both the Earth and the Water, three or four Male *Carps* will follow a Female, and force her through Weeds and Flags, where ſhe lets fall her Spawn,

Spawn, which ſticks faſt to the Weeds, and then they drop their Melt upon it. I have obſerved, it is thought the *Carp* does this ſeveral Months in the Year. When the Spawner has weakened herſelf by doing that natural Office, two or three Melters have been ſeen to help her from off the Weeds, by bearing her up on both Sides, and guarding her into the Deep.

Phyſicians make the Galls and Stones in the Heads of *Carps* to be very medicinal. And in *Italy* great Profit is made of the Spawn of *Carps*, by ſelling it to the *Jews*, who make it into red *Caviare*, they not being by their Law admitted to eat the *Caviare* made of *Sturgeon*; that being a Fiſh which wants Scales, and by them reputed to be unclean.

If you fiſh for a *Carp*, eſpecially a River *Carp*, a great deal of Patience is required. A very good Fiſher has been known to angle diligently four or ſix Hours in a Day, three or four Days together, for a River *Carp*, and not have a Bite. And in ſome Ponds it is as hard to catch a *Carp* as in a River; particularly where they have Store of Food, and the Water is of a clayiſh Colour.

The *Carp* bites either at *Worms* or at *Paſte*, and of *Worms* the *blewiſh Marſh* or *Meadow-worm* is eſteemed the beſt; though another *Worm* not too big may poſſibly do as well, and ſo may a *green Gentle*. As for *Paſtes*, thoſe that are ſweet are the beſt; I mean, thoſe made with Sugar or Honey, and

theſe you beat up in a Mortar, or ſometimes work them up in your Hands, till you make the whole into one, two, or three Balls, as you like beſt for your Uſe. But you muſt work it ſo long in the Mortar, as to make it tough enough to hang upon your Hook without waſhing from it, yet not too hard: It will keep the better on your Hook, if you knead with your *Paſte* a little white, or yellowiſh Wooll. To make this *Paſte* keep all the Year for any other Fiſh, you may mix with it *Virgin's Wax* and *clarified Honey*, and work them with your Hands before the Fire. Some adviſe, that when you fiſh for a *Carp* with *Gentles*, you put upon your Hook a ſmall Piece of ſcarlet Cloth, near a Quarter of an Inch ſquare, having ſoked it in Oil of *Petre*, called by ſome Oil of the Rock; and if your *Gentles* be put two or three Days before into a Box or Horn anointed with Honey, and ſo drawn upon your Hook as to preſerve them living, they ſay you are ſtill more likely to ſucceed this Way than any other. While you are fiſhing, continually chaw a little white or brown Bread in your Mouth, and caſt it into the Pond about the Place where your Float ſwims. Crumbs of white Bread and Honey made into a *Paſte*, is alſo a good Bait for a *Carp*, and eaſily made.

Carps, when in Rivers, ſeek muddy, ſandy Bottoms, and deep ſtill Waters. They will not come near a Boat on a large Pond or River, although Ruſhes or Weeds interpoſe.

They

They are ſo over-wary, fearful, and ſubtle, that they are often ſtiled the *freſh Water Fox*, as by others the *Queen of Rivers*.

Suſſex, whither they were firſt brought, is ſaid to be the beſt furniſhed with *Carps* of any County in *England*. And even in the Sea about the *Iſle of Man*, there are caught very excellent *Tench* and *Carps*. The Male *Carp* is better than the Female, the white better than the yellow, and their prime Seaſon in *March*. They begin to ſpawn at three Years old, and *Dubravius* ſays, continue to do ſo till thirty.

The *Carp*, though much admired, is a very bony Fiſh, and is therefore thought to owe more of his Reputation to the elegant Manner of dreſſing him, than to his own intrinſick Worth.

When you angle for him, put a *Swan-quill-Float* upon your Line, which, when drawn two or three Inches under Water, will direct you to ſtrike. But till you ſee this, be cautious how you check him; for he will nibble ſome Time before he takes the Bait in his Mouth. Having hooked him, beſure you keep him from his *Harbour*, to which he will endeavour to retire, as ſoon as he receives the Prick, and which if you do not prevent, both Hook and Line are in the greateſt Danger.

Some bait their *Carp-Holes* with Worms, in this Manner, and it is a very good Way in Rivers. They get a *Tin-pot* punched full of Holes, in which they put a Quantity of *Worms*, and then ſink it with a Weight. The *Worms* will

will creep out gradually, and become a delicious Prey to the *Carp*. This is better than to caſt in *Worms* by Handfuls, which are uſually carried away with the Stream: But in Ponds you may uſe the latter Method, or you may throw in Quantities of boiled *Malt*, which they alſo like.

Though *Carps* love Mud, yet they delight not in weedy, but clear Water, except the *Weeds* are little in Quantity. In very muddy Water, you may drop your Bait gently near the Brink, uſing a *Float*, but no Lead on your Line, and the *Carp* will imagine your Bait to be a Worm coming out of the Bank.

In a fine Sun-ſhiny Day, *Carp* will often prime about Noon, and ſwim about the Edges of a Pond, to catch ſuch *Flies* as fall upon the Surface of the Water. Let the Angler then take a Rod ſtrong and pliable at the Top, a ſtrong *Silk Line*, and a Hook large enough for a *Lob-worm*. Then finding or making a Place free from Weeds, about the Compaſs of the Crown of a Hat, let him drop in his Bait without a Float, and with only one large Shot upon his Line, which he muſt lodge upon the Leaf of ſome Weed adjoining, ſo that the Bait is not above eight Inches in the Water: Then retiring, but ſo as to keep his Eye upon the Shot, let him wait till he ſees it taken away, with about a Foot of Line, and then he may venture to ſtrike. When he has hooked his Fiſh, let him keep him tight, and not ſuffer him to entangle himſelf among the Weeds; and either

either draw him out by main Force, or pull him to the Bank in a clear Place, and having tired him, land him with a *Net*. By this Method, great Numbers of *Carp* have been taken in a Pond that was well ſtocked.

In general, *Carps* bite very early and late in *April*, *May*, *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, and ſometimes all Night in the ſtill Part of the Water. Have a long Rod, and keep out of Sight, when you angle for them. When you ſtrike him, give him Play; for he is a ſtrong Fiſh, and will vigorouſly ſtruggle. He may be caught at Mid-Water, ſometimes lower, and ſometimes higher, as the Weather is; but uſe always a Float of Quill. When a large *Carp* takes the Bait, he runs to the farther Side of the River or Pond.

There being great Similitude between the *Carp* and the *Tench*, particularly in their Feed, I refer to the End of next Chapter for what may be ſaid of them jointly in *Verſe*. But I muſt not here omit one Thing, in which the *Carp* and the *Tench* widely differ, and that is in their bearing the ſevere cold Weather. Hear what the Poet ſays of them, and ſeveral other Fiſh, in the following Verſes.

The Eel *to* Cold *an early Prey reſign'd,*
Firſt falls, a helpleſs undefended Kind:
Unleſs her wintry Hold betimes ſhe chuſe,
The Banky Shelter, or low-bedded Doze.
The Carp *and* Perch *in mingling Numbers die,*
And Pike *expire with the unravag'd Fry:*

They

They feel their Scales with ſtiff'ning Cold confin'd,
And languiſh faint within their Icy Rhind:
Yet does the hardy Tench *ſecurely dwell,*
Envelop'd faſt in her cold frozen Shell.

CHAP. VII.
Of the TENCH.

THE *Tench* is eſteemed the *Phyſician* of the Finny Race. He delights in ſtanding Waters, and therefore loves Ponds better than Rivers, and prefers Pits to them both. There is a River, however, in *Dorſetſhire*, that abounds with *Tench*; but they are ſuppoſed to retire to the moſt deep and quiet Places about it.

This Fiſh hath very large Fins, very ſmall and ſmooth Scales, a red Circle about his Eyes, which are big and of a Gold Colour; and from either Angle of his Mouth there hangs a little Barb. In every *Tench's* Head there are two little Stones, which foreign Phyſicians, ſays Mr. *Walton*, make great uſe of: But he is not commended for wholſome Meat, tho' there be very much Uſe made of him for outward Applications.

It is of the *Pike* eſpccially, that the *Tench* is ſaid to be the Phyſician; and that the *Pike*, being either ſick or hurt, is cured by touching him. But this Fiſh, that carries a natural Balſam in him to cure both himſelf and others, yet loves to feed in very foul Water, and a-

mongſt Weeds. He will bite at a Paſte made of *Brown-bread* and *Honey*, or at a *Marſh-worm*, *Lob-worm*, *Waſps*, *Gentles*, or *Cod-bait*. He is very fond of *Tar*, and therefore if you mix a little with your Paſte, or dip your Worm in it, many affirm it will increaſe your Sport, and the Experiment doubtleſs is worth trying.

His Haunts and Times of Biting are generally the ſame with the *Carp*; yet in *April*, on a cloudy, miſling, rainy Morning, the Wind South or Weſt, and warm, they have been known to bite very well till eleven o'Clock. In ſome Pits they breed only, and never thrive to any Bigneſs, and in others they thrive and never breed. Notwithſtanding the ill Character ſome have given of him, the *Tench* is a good and pleaſant Fiſh, if eat in his Seaſon, and well dreſt; but one River *Tench* is worth ten Pond.

Beſides the River *Stower* in *Dorſetſhire*, ſo particularly commended for Plenty of *Tench* and *Eels*; there is *Brecknock-Mere*, in *Brecknockſhire*, being two Miles in length, and as much in breadth, full of *Perches*, *Tenches*, and *Eels*.

Tenches ſpawn in *June*, or about the Beginning of *July*: They live long out of Water, and their beſt Seaſon is from the Beginning of *September* till the End of *May*.

Your Tackle for the *Tench* muſt be ſtrong, and you muſt attend your Sport early in the Morn-

Morning, and two or three Hours before Night.

The Waters ought to be ſo ſtill, and the Surface ſo ſmooth and even, that it cannot give the leaſt Motion to your Float. Be not too eager in ſtriking him when he bites; for as he delights in ſucking the Bait, allow him Time, and he will not quit it. The beſt and moſt inticing Bait, and indeed ſome ſay you need not uſe any other, whether for Pond or River, is the *Red-worm* dipp'd in *Tar:* Or, take the clotted black Blood out of the Heart of a *Sheep*, ſome fine *Flour* and *Honey*, temper them well together, and make them of the Conſiſtence of an Unguent, and anoint the *Red-worm* with it. Some prefer this, and others the *Tar*. No other Bait is to be compared to either of them. *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt* are the only Months in which you may expect to have any Sport with *Tench*; and then the greateſt Plenty is taken in the River *Stower*, before mentioned.

Moſt of the following general Remarks are equally uſeful both for the *Carp* and the *Tench*.

To Carp *and* Tench *great Art you muſt apply,*
Which love ſtill Pits, *and chryſtal Currents fly.*
They all your Patience, all your Strength require,
And, tho' admir'd, rarely your Baits admire.
Sometimes in Rivers *to your Lot they fall;*
But there's no Vigour where the Hopes are ſmall.

To ſpeed in Ponds, *you with the* Sun *muſt* riſe,
And then the largeſt *eaſieſt are your* Prize.
They ſtrongly ſtruggle, *and unleſs prepar'd,*
Your Victory's *doubtful, and your* Labour *hard.*
Ponds weedy *feed the* Tench, *and thoſe more clear*
Beſt pleaſe the Carp; yet both for Mud *declare:*
And in their Baits *ſo cloſely they agree,*
They feed *juſt as they live, promiſcuouſly.*
Both love their Baits *prepar'd with niceſt Care,*
And both beſt take them ſcented *ſtrong with* Tar.
Low at the Bottom, in the Deeps *they lie,*
And rarely, very rarely feed on high.
Tho' oft' the Carp in hotteſt Summer-Days,
While on the Surface *wantonly he plays,*
On Bread *and* Worms *with eager Paſſion preys.*
But if your Rod *or* Self *offend his* Sight,
He's gone, and blaſts at once your whole Delight.
He's humourſome at beſt, Experience tells,
For Seaſon, Baits, *and* Place, *and all Things elſe:*
But in the Midſt *he ſeldom fails to move,*
And Marſh *and* Flag-worm *takes with eager* Love.
For Tench *no* Breeze *ſhould ſtir the well-tarr'd Bait,*
On which both late *and* early *thou muſt wait.*
Gentles *and* Codbaits *Sport will often yield;*
But ſtill for Carp *the* former *claims the Field.*

CHAP.

CHAP. VIII.

Of the BARBEL.

THE *Barbel* is ſo called from the *Latin* Word *Barba*, a Beard, in alluſion to the Barb, or Wattels at his Mouth, under his Chaps. He is one of thoſe leather-mouthed Fiſhes that ſeldom breaks his Hold if he be once hooked: But then he is ſo ſtrong, that he will often break both Rod or Line, if he proves to be a large one. But tho' the *Barbel* is of a fine Shape, he is not eſteemed the beſt Fiſh to eat, either for Wholſomeneſs or Taſte. The Male, however, is reputed much better than the Female, whoſe Spawn is very hurtful.

Barbels flock together like Sheep, and are at the worſt in *April*, about which Time they ſpawn, but quickly grow again in Seaſon. They are able to live in the ſtrongeſt Swifts of the Water, and in Summer love the ſhalloweſt and ſharpeſt Streams. They delight to lurk under Weeds, and to feed on Gravel againſt a riſing Ground: They will root and dig in the Sands with their Noſe, like a Swine, and there neſt themſelves: Yet ſometimes they retire to deep and ſwift Bridges, Floodgates, or Weirs, where they will neſt themſelves amongſt Piles, or in hollow Places, and take ſuch Hold of Moſs or Weeds, that be the Water never ſo ſwift, it is not able to force

them from the Place they contend for. This is the *Barbel's* conſtant Cuſtom in Summer, when he and moſt living Creatures ſport themſelves in the Sun: But at the Approach of Winter, he forſakes the ſwift Streams and ſhallow Waters, and by degrees retires to thoſe Parts of the River that are more quiet and deep; in which Places he ſpawns, and, with the Help of the *Melter*, hides his Spawn or Eggs in Holes, which they both dig in the Gravel, and then mutually labour to cover it with the ſame Sand, to prevent it from being devoured by other Fiſh. The Spawn of a *Barbel*, tho' not abſolutely Poiſon, as ſome imagine, is however dangerous Meat, and eſpecially in the Month of *May*; yet it is ſometimes taken by the Country People for a violent Purge or Vomit.

This Fiſh is of a fine Caſt, with ſmall Scales, which are placed after a moſt exact and curious Manner. Tho' he be not delicately good, yet his Fleſh is tender, eaſy of Concoction, and very nutritious. His greateſt Fault is, that he is very bony. Both the *Chub* and he have loſt part of their Credit by ill Cookery, they being reputed the coarſeſt of freſh Water Fiſh: But the *Barbel* affords an Angler fine Sport, being a ſtrong and a cunning Fiſh; ſo ſtrong and cunning, as to often endanger the breaking of the Tackle, by running his Head forcibly towards any Covert, Hole, or Bank, and then ſtriking at the Line, to break it off with his Tail. He is alſo ſo artful as to nibble

and

and ſuck off your *Worm* cloſe to the Hook, and yet avoid the letting the Hook come into his Mouth.

The *Barbel* is alſo delicate in his Baits, and muſt have them clean and ſweet. Your *Worms* ſhould be well-ſcoured, and not kept in ſour and muſty Moſs. But at a well-ſcoured *Lob-worm* he will bite boldly, and eſpecially if the Night or two before you fiſh for him, you bait the Places where you intend to ſtand, with big *Worms* cut into Pieces. And this is particularly to be noted, that you cannot over-bait the Place, nor fiſh too early nor too late for a *Barbel*. He will alſo bite at *Bees* and at *Gentles*, they not being too much ſcoured, but green, and at Cheeſe, which is not to be too hard, but kept a Day or two in a wet Linnen Cloth to make it tough. With this you may alſo bait the Water a Day or two before you fiſh for him, and if the *Cheeſe* were laid in clarified Honey an Hour or two before, you would be ſtill the likelier to have Sport. Some have directed to cut the *Cheeſe* into thin Pieces, and toaſt it, and then tie it on the Hook with fine Silk. Others adviſe to fiſh for the *Barbel* with *Sheeps Tallow* and *ſoft Cheeſe* beaten or worked into a *Paſte*, and recommend it as exceeding good in *Auguſt*. But the *Lob-worm* well-ſcoured, the *Gentle* not too much ſcoured, and *Cheeſe* ordered as here directed, are uſually Baits enough in any Month of the Year.

When you fiſh for a *Barbel*, your Rod and Line muſt be long and tough. He bites early in the Morning, from Sun-riſe till ten of the Clock, and in the Evening, from four o'Clock till Sun-ſet, and ſometimes later. Their principal biting Months are from about the 10th of *May* until the End of *Auguſt*. A large *Barbel* will ſometimes weigh twelve or fourteen Pounds; and therefore your Rod and Line ought not only to be very ſtrong, but faſtened with Rings, and a *Winch* or *Wheel*.

As to their Spawn, before-mentioned, it is ſurfeiting and dangerous, and whoever eats thereof will break out in Blotches and red Spots, will loath his Meat, loſe his Appetite, and be extremely diſordered: His Liver is likewiſe unwholſome.

The two famous Places to angle for *Barbel*, about *London*, are at *Kingſton-Bridge*, and *Shepperton-Pool*; at the latter of which Places there is good Accommodation for Anglers, a great Quantity of *Barbel*, and good Company all the Summer; you may there likewiſe be ſupplied with Plenty of Bait at all Times.

A *Barbel-Hole* ſhould be conſtantly baited with *Lob-worms*; and no *Barbel* ought, by the Rules of *Angling*, to be killed, which does not meaſure eighteen Inches fairly. A *Barbel* taken in *Byfleet* or *Weybridge* Rivers, of twenty Inches in Length, will weigh down another of the ſame Length taken in the *Thames*, by a Pound, or upwards, and is much firmer, fatter, and better reliſhed.

The

The Barbel *priz'd for* Sport, *tho' not for* Food,
(Few Fiſh *there are* leſs *exquiſitely good)*
Cloſe at a Current's End *is ſure to lie,*
Low *in the* Stream, *as the ſwift* Trout *runs high.*
True River Hog, *upon the* Sand *he roots;*
At Lobworms, Bees, *and ev'n at* Garbadge *ſhoots;*
But always beſt, if early at the Sport,
His Morning *Appetite you wiſely court.*
When gentle Winds *a little curl the Waves,*
Much Caution and much Patience too he ſaves.
But ſee your Lines *and* Hooks *ſecurely hold;*
You know him ſtrong, *and you will find him* bold.
If Chance, propitious, at ſome Current's End,
Shew you clear Sands *that gradually deſcend,*
Where ſome cloſe Weeds *his lab'ring Fins ſupply,*
Or hanging Oſiers *ſhade the ſportive Fry;*
Angler, *take Courage; ev'ry Inch beware;*
For, if in all the Stream, the Herd *is there,*
Diſturb them not with Shadow *or with* Sound;
And if your Bait *trail gently on the Ground,*
Except in Spawning-Time, *no Obſtacle is found.*

CHAP. IX.

Of the BREAM.

THE *Bream*, at full Growth, is a large and handſome Fiſh: He breeds both in Rivers and Ponds; but loves beſt to live in Ponds, where, if he likes the Water and

Air, he will grow not only to be of a great Size, but extremely fat. He is very broad, has a forked Tail, and his Scales are ſet in beautiful Order. He hath large Eyes, and a narrow ſucking Mouth, with two Sets of Teeth, and a Lozenge-like Bone, to help his Grinding. The Melter is obſerved to have two large Melts, and the Female two large Bags of Spawn.

The *French* eſteem this Fiſh highly, and have this Proverb concerning him, That *he who hath* Breams *in his Pond, is able to bid his Friend welcome.* The beſt Part of a *Bream* is his Belly and Head.

Some ſay, that *Breams* and *Roaches* will mix their Eggs and Melt together, whence there is in many Places a Baſtard Breed of *Breams*, that never come to be either large or good, but very numerous. The *Bream* however is very ſcarce in the Rivers within twenty Miles of *London.*

Paſte made of brown Bread and Honey, *Gentles*, or the *young Brood of Waſps*, (which are not unlike *Gentles*,) and ſhould be hardened in an Oven, or dried on a Tile before the Fire, to make them tough, are good Baits for the *Bream.* There is alſo at the Root of Docks, or Ruſhes in watery Places, a *Worm* not unlike a *Maggot*, at which both *Bream* and *Tench* will bite freely. Or the *Bream* will bite at a *Graſshopper* with the Legs cropt off, in *June* and *July*; or at ſeveral *Flies* under Water, which may be found on Flags that grow

grow near the Water-ſide. Many other Baits are very good, but the following moſt excellent one, either for a *Carp* or a *Bream*, in any River or Mere, Mr. *Walton* ſays, may ſupply the Place of them all.

Chuſe out the biggeſt *Red-worm* you can find, without a Knot; get a Pint or a Quart of them in an Evening, in Garden-Walks, or chalky Commons after a Shower of Rain; and put them with clean Moſs well waſhed and picked, and the Water ſqueezed out as clean as you can, into an Earthen Pot or Pipkin ſet dry: Change the Moſs every three or four Days for three Weeks or a Month together, and then your Bait will be at the beſt, exceeding clear and lively.

Having thus prepared your Baits, take three long Angling-Rods, and as many and more Silk or Hair Lines, with a like Number of large Swan or Gooſe-quill ſtrong Floats. Then take Pieces of Lead made like a Plummet, and faſten them to the lower End of your Lines. Faſten your Link-Hook alſo to the Lead, and let there be about a Foot or ten Inches between the Lead and the Hook. But be ſure the Lead be heavy enough to ſink the Float or Quill a little under Water, and not the Quill to bear up the Lead, becauſe the latter muſt lie on the Ground. Your Link next the Hook ſhould be ſmaller than the reſt of your Line, if you dare venture it, for fear of taking the *Pike* or *Perch*, who will be ſure to viſit your Hooks, before either *Carp* or *Bream*

will

will come near to bite. On this Account, the *Indian* Graſs makes the moſt convenient Hook-Links. When the Worm is well-baited, it will crawl up and down, as far as the Lead will give Leave, which much entices the Fiſh to bite without Suſpicion.

With your Baits thus prepared, and your Tackling fitted, repair to the River, where you have ſeen them ſwim in Skulls or Shoals in the Summer-Time, in a hot After-noon, about three or four o'Clock: Watch their going forth of their deep Holes, and returning again about four o'Clock, when moſt of them ſeek Proviſion at the Bottom, while one or two will lie on the Top of the Water, rolling and tumbling, to keep Centinel. Obſerve where he plays moſt, and ſtays longeſt, which commonly is in the broadeſt and deepeſt Place of the River; and there, or near thereabouts, at a clear Bottom, and a convenient Landing-Place, take one of your Angles fitted as aforeſaid, and ſound the Bottom, which ſhould be about eight or ten Feet deep, and two Yards from the Bank. Then reflect with yourſelf, whether that Water will riſe or fall by the next Morning, by reaſon of any Water-mills near, and according to your Diſcretion take the Depth of the Place, where you mean after to caſt your Ground-bait, and to fiſh with the utmoſt Exactneſs; ſo that the Lead lying on or near the Ground-bait, the Top of the Float may only appear upright half an Inch above the Water. When you

have

have thus found the Place and its Depth, go home and prepare your Ground-bait in the following Manner. Take a Peck, or a Peck and half, according to the Magnitude of the Stream and Depth of the Water where you mean to angle, of ſweet coarſe-ground Barley-Malt, and juſt boil it up in a Kettle: Then ſtrain it through a Bag into a Tub, and when the Bag and Malt is near cold, take it down to the Water-ſide about eight or nine o'Clock in the Evening, but not before: Caſt in two Parts of your Ground-bait, ſqueezed hard between both your Hands: It will ſink preſently to the Bottom, and beſure it may lie in the very Place where you mean to angle. If the Stream runs hard, or moves a little, caſt your Malt in Handfuls a little the higher up the Stream. You may ſqueeze the Malt ſo faſt together in Handfuls, that the Water will hardly part it with the Fall.

Leave your Bag, with the reſt of your Tackling and Ground-bait, near the Sporting-Place all Night, and in the Morning about three or four o'Clock, re-viſit the Water-ſide; but not too near; for they have always a Centinel, and the whole Shoal are very watchful. Then gently take one of your Rods, and bait your Hook, caſting it over your Ground-bait, and gently draw it to you till the Lead reſts about the Middle of the Ground-bait.

Take a ſecond Rod, and caſt it in about a Yard above, and your third about a Yard below the firſt Rod: Fix the Rods in the Ground,

Ground, and go yourſelf ſo far from the Water-ſide, that you perceive nothing but the Top of the Floats, which you muſt diligently obſerve. When you have a Bite, you'll perceive the Top of your Float to ſink ſuddenly into the Water: But be not too haſty to run to your Rods, till you ſee that the Line got clear away: Then creep to the Water-ſide, and give as much Line as you poſſibly can. If it be a good *Carp* or *Bream*, they will go to the farther Side of the River: Then ſtrike gently, and hold your Rod a little while at a Bent; but if you pull both together, you are ſure to loſe your Game, for either the Line or Hook, or the Fiſhes Hold will break. After you have overcome them, they will make noble Sport, and are very ſhy to be landed. But the *Carp* is far ſtronger, and more mettleſome than the *Bream*.

As the *Bream*'s delightful Harbour is the *Water-dock*, under which he lies, ſo you muſt take care to keep him from thence, when you have hooked him: He will ſtrive to get thither, that he may entangle your Line about the Stalk of the *Water-dock*, which being naturally very tough, it will be impoſſible to diſengage yourſelf from thence. His being a flat Fiſh, cauſes him to draw much Water; which, though it does not increaſe his natural Strength, nevertheleſs it will add to the Difficulty you will find in taking him.

I have already obſerved, that if the *Pike* and *Perch* breeds in that River, they will be ſure to bite firſt; and when they do, they muſt

muſt be firſt taken. For the moſt Part you will find them very large. They repair to the Ground-bait, not that they will eat of it, but to feed and ſport amongſt the young Fry, that gather about and hover over the Bait.

The Way to diſcover the *Pike* and to take him, if you miſtruſt your *Bream*-Hook, may be thus: Take a ſmall *Bleak*, a *Roach*, or *Gudgeon*, and plant it alive among your Rods two Foot deep from the Cork, with a little *Red-worm* on the Point of the Hook: Then take a few Crumbs of White-bread, or ſome of the Ground-bait, and ſprinkle it gently amongſt your Rods. If the *Pike* be there, the little Fiſh will skip out of the Water at his Appearance; but the liveſet Bait is ſure to be taken.

You may continue your Sport from four in the Morning till eight; and if it be a gloomy, windy Day, they will bite all Day long. But this is too long to ſtand to your Rods at one Place, and it will ſpoil your Evening Sport that Day, which is this.

About four o' Clock in the Afternoon repair to your baited Place, and as ſoon as you come to the Water-ſide, caſt in one half of the reſt of your Ground-bait, and ſtand off: Then, whilſt the Fiſh are gathering together, you may repoſe yourſelf ſo long as the ſmoking a Pipe of Tobacco. Then put in your three Rods as in the Morning, and you will find excellent Sport till eight o' Clock: When you go away, caſt in the Reſidue of your Ground-bait, and next Morning by four o' Clock viſit them a-

gain

gain for four Hours, which is the beſt Sport of all. After that the beſt Way is to let them reſt; for if you fiſh for them three or four Days together, your Game will be very ſhy and wary. Your only Way therefore, is to deſiſt from your Sport about two or three Days; and in the mean Time, take a Turf of green, but ſhort Graſs, as big or bigger than a round Trencher: To the Top of it, on the green Side, with a Needle and green Thread, faſten one by one as many little Red-worms as will near cover all the Turf: Then take a round Board or Trencher, with a Hole in the Middle, and through the Turf placed on the Board or Trencher, with a Cord as long as is needful, tied to the Pole, let it down to the Bottom of the Water for the Fiſh to feed upon, and thus leave them without Diſturbance. When after two or three Days you have drawn it away, you may fall to, and enjoy your former Recreation.

As I ſhall mention the *Sea-Bream* hereafter, I will only add to what has been ſaid of the Nature of *River-Bream*, that he is by ſome eſteemed dangerous to eat, by reaſon of his Bones: That tho' the Bream is a kind of flat Carp, yet he is whiter, and of better Nouriſhment: That he is ſo great a Breeder as often to over-ſtock your Pond, and thereby conſume all the ſweet Feed, and ſtarve the other Fiſh: That he ſpawns in *June*, or the Beginning of *July*: And that tho' you may angle for them from the Beginning of *April* till *Michaelmas*, yet

yet the beſt Time is from the Beginning of the laſt Week in *July* till the laſt Week in *Auguſt*. To ſum up theſe Directions;

Chuſe ſome ſtill Pond, or *ſlow* diſcolour'd Stream,
And at Mid-water *angle for the* Bream.
Nice *to Extremes, his Minutes you muſt wait,*
Be early *with the Sun, and with the Moon-ſhine* late,
Unleſs a Mack'rel Gale *ſhould recommend your Bait.*
Small *be* your Hook, *your* Rod *ſix Yards or more*:
And in the Stream, *far diſtant from the* Shore,
You'll find him roving, and with Eaſe divine
'Tis he that flats *your* Float *and tugs your* Line.
He gorges *then: Ah! Angler, ah! bewware;*
If large *your* Bait, *you muſt no Patience ſpare:*
If ſmall, *a little ſerves; his Mouth allows*
Of nothing large; the leſs the better does.
Hence tho' ſome few the larger Dew-worm *uſe;*
Yet moſt the Flag, *or well-ſcour'd* Red-worm *chuſe:*
For theſe both Flies *and* Paſtes *the Angler ſhould refuſe.*

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

Of the Chub *or* Chevin.

THE *Chub*, tho' uſually diſeſteemed, and juſtly as he is commonly dreſſed, may with Care be made not an unpleaſant Diſh. It is objected againſt him, not only that he is full of ſmall forked Bones, but that he eats wateriſh, and that the Fleſh of him is not firm, but ſhort and taſteleſs. In order therefore to encourage the young Angler, and to let him ſee that his Time is not wholly loſt in taking this diſregarded Fiſh, ſome have thought proper, in the firſt Place, to let him know how to make the *Chub* recompence the Trouble he cauſes, which indeed is ſeldom a great deal. But as this Method is ſomewhat prepoſterous, I chuſe rather to refer the Cooking of the *Chub* to that Part which treats expreſly of dreſſing Fiſh, and content myſelf with obſerving here, that there is as much Difference between a *Chub* newly taken and dreſs'd, and one of a Day's keeping after he is dead, as between Cherries newly gathered from a Tree, and others that have been bruiſed, and lain a Day or two in Water.

There is no Fiſh better than the Chub to enter a young Angler, he is ſo eaſily caught; but then it muſt be in this particular Way. Go to one of their Holes, where in moſt hot Days you may find a Number of them floating near the Top

Top of the Water. Get two or three Graſshoppers as you go over the Meadows, and place yourſelf ſecretly behind a Tree, remaining as free from Motion as poſſible. Put a Graſshopper upon your Hook, and let your Hook hang a quarter of a Yard ſhort of the Water: To which End you muſt reſt your Rod on ſome Bough of a Tree. It is likely the *Chubs* will ſink down towards the Bottom of the Water at the firſt Shadow of your Rod, they being the moſt fearful of Fiſhes, and apt to do thus if but a Bird flies over them, and makes the leaſt Shadow on the Water: But they will preſently riſe up to the Top again, and there lie ſoaring till ſome Shadow frights him afreſh: When they lie thus upon the Top of the Water, fix your Eye upon the beſt *Chub* you can ſingle out, and move your Rod gently towards him. Let your Bait fall eaſily upon the Water three or four Inches before him, and he will infallibly take it, and you will be as certain to catch him: For he is one of thoſe Leather-mouth'd Fiſhes, of which a Hook ſcarce ever loſes its hold: But be ſure to give him Play enough, before you offer to take him out of the Water.

When a *Graſshopper* cannot be found, a *Black-Snail*, with his Belly ſlit, to ſhew his White, or a Piece of ſoft *Cheeſe*, will uſually do as well: Nay, ſometimes a *Worm*, or any kind of *Fly*, as the *Ant-fly*, the *Fleſh-fly*, or *Wall-fly*, the *Dor* or *Beetle*, which may be found under Cow-dung, or a *Bob*, the Original of a *Beetle*, or a *Cod-worm*, or *Caſe-worm*,

will

will any of them do very well for the Purpoſe. After the ſame Manner you may catch a *Trout* in a hot Evening. When as you walk by a Brook, you ſee or hear him leap at Flies, if you then get a *Graſshopper*, and put it on a Hook, with your Line about two Yards long, ſtanding behind a Buſh or Tree where his Hole is, and make your Bait ſtir up and down on the Top of the Water, you may, if you ſtand cloſe, be ſure of a Bite, but not ſure to catch him, becauſe he is not, as the *Chub*, a Leather-mouth'd Fiſh. After this Manner you may fiſh for him with almoſt any kind of live *Fly*, but with nothing ſo ſucceſsful as a *Graſshopper*.

As we have frequent Occaſion to uſe this Term *Leather-mouth'd*, it may here be proper, before we proceed, to explain what Anglers mean by that Word. *Leather-mouth'd* Fiſh are ſuch as have their Teeth in their Throat, among which are the *Chub*, the *Barbel*, the *Gudgeon*, the *Carp*, and divers others. The Hook being ſtuck into the Leather, or Skin of the Mouth of ſuch Fiſh, ſeldom or never loſes its Hold: But on the contrary, a *Pike*, a *Perch*, or a *Trout*, and ſome other Fiſh, which have not their Teeth in their Throats, but in their Mouths, the Hook never takes ſuch ſure Hold of them, but you often loſe your Prey, unleſs he has intirely gorged it.

In *March* and *April* the *Chub* is uſually taken with *Worms*; in *May*, *June*, and *July*, he will bite at any *Fly*, or at *Cherries*, or at *Beetles* with their Legs and Wings cut off,

or

or at any Kind of *Snail*, or at the *black Bee* that breeds in Clay Walls; and he never refuſes a *Graſshopper* on the Top of a ſwift Stream, nor at the Bottom the young *Humble-bee* that breeds in long Graſs, and is generally found by the Mowers. In *Auguſt*, and in the cooler Months, a *yellow Paſte* made of the ſtrongeſt Cheeſe, and pounded in a Mortar with a little Butter, and ſo much Saffron as being beaten ſmall will turn it to a Lemon Colour, is a very good Bait. In the Winter Months the *Chub* is accounted beſt, it being obſerved that the forked Bones are then loſt, or turned into a Kind of Griſtle, eſpecially if he be baked. Some make a *Paſte* for this Seaſon, of Cheeſe and Turpentine. He will bite alſo at a *Minnow* or *Penk*, as well as the *Trout*. But take this for a Rule in *Chub-fiſhing*, that in hot Weather he is to be angled for towards the Mid-water, or near the Top; and in colder Weather nearer the Bottom. And if you fiſh for him on the Top, with a *Beetle* or *Fly*, be ſure to let your Line be very long, and to keep out of Sight. The Spawn of this Fiſh is excellent Meat; and the Head of a large *Chevin*, the Throat being well waſhed, is the beſt Part of him.

The *Chub* ſpawns in *March*, and is in Seaſon from *Mid-May* till after *Candlemaſs*, but beſt in Winter. He likes ſandy and clay Bottoms, and Streams ſhaded with Trees. Sometimes, in cold Weather, he is taken at the Bottom with a *Ledger-bait*. When Cattle, in Summer

Summer, come into the Fords, their Dung allures him thither.

The *Chub* bites in Summer from Sun-riſe till Nine o'Clock in the Forenoon, and from Three o'Clock in the Afternoon till Sun-ſet. After ſtruck, he quickly yields, if a large one; but the leſſer ſtruggle briskly and longer. In Winter Months they bite in the Middle of the Day, and in Sun-ſhine. During the Summer Seaſon, if about Seven o'Clock in the Evening you go into a Pond or Boat, and floating down the River, over which Willows or other Trees do hang, angle with a *Bee*, *Moth*, or the like, as you do with the *artificial Fly* for *Trout*, they will riſe as faſt as you can throw out your Line for them.

To the Baits before-mentioned, which are eſteemed the beſt, I will add a few others, tho' the *Chub* will take almoſt any Sort of Bait. Young *Eels* about the Thickneſs of a Straw; the *Dew-worm* and *Red-worm* well ſcoured; the *Earth-bob*; the *Brains* of an *Ox* or *Cow*; the *Pith* or *Marrow* of an *Ox* or *Cow's Back-bone*; fat *Bacon*: Theſe are good Baits for the cooler Months. In the Summer Months, he takes all Sorts of Baits bred on Herbs, Plants, or Trees; alſo *Gentles*, young *Waſps*, *Hornets*, and *Dores*. *Snails* he takes early in the Morning, but ſeldom in the Heat of the Day. He loves a large Bait, as a *Waſp* and a *Colewort-worm*, and will bite at divers Sorts of Flies on the Hook at once.

Some

Some few other Inſtructions are contained in the following Lines.

The Chub *or* Chevin *conſtantly is found*
In quick deep Streams *that run o'er* marly Ground.
For tho' in muddy Rivers *much he preys,*
Yet there he nicely ſeeks the Sands *or* Clays;
Or elſe the Bridge *his Safeguard is, and* Haunts
Where Strength *in* Tackle *beſt his own ſupplants:*
Of theſe, when ſtruck, he's eaſily bereav'd,
And after ſome few Flounces well deceiv'd.
Here Hooks *and* Rods *ſhould have ſufficient* Strength,
And the ſtrong Line *be half the Angle's Length.*
Floats *may be ſpar'd, as when you uſe the* Fly,
And gentle Dabs *ſhould ſummon him on high.*
All Noiſe, *all* Shadow *ſhun with utmoſt Care:*
The fearful Fiſh *each Accident will ſcare;*
Elſe all Day *long he bites, and* ev'ry where.
Oft' basking under ſhady Trees *he lies;*
Then at the Graſshopper *he'll freely riſe,*
The Dor, *the* Caterpiller, Waſp, *or* Bee,
The Moth, *the* Ant, *or* any Fly *you ſee.*
But various Anglers various Baits *will uſe,*
For ſome the Snail, *and ſome the* Minnow *chuſe:*
And if the River's deep, *and current* ſtrong,
Without Succeſs you cannot tempt him long.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Of the EEL, *&c.*

THE *Eel* was in the higheſt Eſteem among the *Romans*, who thought her the Paragon of their Feaſts; and is univerſally allowed, at this Day, to be a moſt delicious Fiſh. There has been much Diſpute about their Breeding, many having denied them Generation, and aſcribed their Origin to the Action of the Sun upon the Mud, to the Putrefaction of the Earth, and divers other Cauſes. Thoſe that deny them to breed by Generation, demand, If any Man ever ſaw an *Eel* to have Spawn or Melt? They are thus anſwered, That we may be as certain of their Breeding, as if we had ſeen their Spawn: For *Eels* have all Parts fit for Generation, like other Fiſh, but ſo ſmall as not to be eaſily diſcerned with the naked Eye, by reaſon of their Fatneſs; but that they may however be diſcovered, and that the He and She *Eel* may be diſtinguiſhed by their Fins. Some affirm that they have ſeen *Eels* cling together like *Dew-worms*.

There has been an Opinion, that *Eels* growing old, breed other *Eels* out of the Corruption of their own Age, which exceeds not ten Years. And another, that as Pearls are made of glutinous Dew-drops, which are condenſed by the Sun's Heat in hot Countries; ſo *Eels* are bred of a particular Dew falling in the Month

of

of *May* or *June* on the Banks of Ponds or Rivers, which, in a few Days, are by the Sun's Heat turned into *Eels*. In the Beginning of *July*, ſome Parts of a River, not far from *Canterbury*, may be ſeen covered over with young *Eels*, about the Thickneſs of a Straw, all lying on the Top of the Water. The like is reported of other Rivers, as particularly of the *Severn*, and of a Pond or Mere near *Staffordſhire*, where, about a ſet Time in Summer, ſuch ſmall *Eels* abound ſo much, that many of the poorer Sort of People, that inhabit near it, take them out with Sieves or Sheets, and make a Kind of Eel-cake of them, and eat it as Bread. But doubtleſs theſe are all bred by Generation, as well as other Animals of every Kind.

We are told that thoſe *Eels* which are bred in Rivers that communicate with the Sea, never return to the freſh Waters when they have once taſted the ſalt; which is the more probable, becauſe powdered Beef is a moſt excellent Bait to catch an *Eel*.

It is granted that *Eels*, during the ſix cold Months of the Year, move not up and down, either in Rivers or Pools, but get into the ſoft Earth or Mud, and there many of them together bed themſelves, and live without feeding upon any Thing. In extreme cold Weather, they have beeen known to get out of the Water into a Stack of Hay in a Meadow upon dry Ground, and there bed themſelves, till the Froſt killed them. And as the *Eel* is impatient of Cold, ſo it hath been obſerved, that in

warm Weather one has been known to live five Days out of the Water.

There are ſeveral Sorts of *Eels*; as the *ſilver Eel*; the *green* or *greeniſh Eel*, which in the River of *Thames* are called *Grigs*; a *blackiſh Eel*, whoſe Head is flatter and bigger than the common *Eels*; and an *Eel* whoſe Fins are reddiſh, which is but ſeldom taken in this Nation. Moſt allow, that the *ſilver Eel* is viviparous, that is, brings forth her Young alive, not by Spawning like other Fiſh, but that her Brood come perfect from her, no bigger nor longer than Pins.

The *Eel* may be caught with divers Kinds of Baits: *Powdered Beef*, a *Lob* or *Garden-worm*, a *Frog*, a *Minnow*, or other ſmall Fiſh, the *Gut* of a *Hen*, *Chicken*, or any Fiſh, or almoſt any Offals will tempt him; for he is a greedy Fiſh. But a very little *Lamprey*, which ſome call a *Pride*, and which may in the hot Months be found in the River *Thames*, and in many Mud-heaps in other Rivers, almoſt as commonly as one finds Worms in a Dunghill, exceeds every other Bait.

The *Eel* ſeldom ſtirs in the Day, and therefore he is uſually caught at Night with one of theſe Baits, by laying Hooks, which you are to faſten to the Bank or Twigs of a Tree; or by throwing a String croſs the Stream with many Hooks at it, baited with the aforeſaid Baits, and a Clod, Plummet, or Stone, thrown into the River with it, that ſo you may in the

the Morning find it near ſome fixed Place, and take it up with a Drag-hook, or otherwiſe.

Eels are always in Seaſon, and very good; but their beſt Time is in Winter, and their worſt in *May*. They have a very ſweet Fleſh, fat, white, pleaſant, and nouriſhing. They are beſt roaſted and broiled; or firſt parboiled in Salt and Water, and then roaſted or broiled, which makes them very tender.

The Rivers *Stower* in *Dorſetſhire*, *Ankam* in *Lincolnſhire*, and *Irk* in *Lancaſhire*, are fam'd by their reſpective Neighbours for very excellent *Eels*. And our ingenious Mr. *Pope* has celebrated the River *Kennet* in *Berkſhire* on the ſame account, in his *Windſor Foreſt*.

The Kennet *ſwift, for ſilver* Eels *renown'd.*

In *Rumſey-Mere* in *Huntingtonſhire*, there are Store of *Eels* and large *Pikes*, which they there call *Hagets*. But *Cambridgeſhire* fanſies ſhe has the moſt and beſt *Eels*, if you credit the Natives. The *Severn* in *Worceſterſhire* breeds and feeds ſuch a Number of freſh Water *Lampreys*, as if Nature had there ſtored a Pond with them. Theſe Fiſh are like *Eels*, ſlippery and blackiſh, but beneath on their Bellies ſomewhat blue. At either Side of their Throat they receive and let in freſh Water at ſeven Holes, becauſe they want Gills. They are beſt in the Spring-time, being then very ſweet: For in the Summer the inner Nerve

or String, which ſerves them inſtead of a Back-bone, grows hard; and this String or Nerve is always to be taken away when you dreſs them. Whenſoever you either roaſt, fry, or broil *Eels*, *Congers*, or *Lampreys*, be ſure they be done brown, tender, and criſp; and firſt well par-boiled in Water, with Salt and Fennel, or ſweet Herbs, which corrects and renders their Fleſh more pleaſant, tender and palatable. A delicate Cake, called *Elver-Cake*, is made of the young Fry of *Severn Lampreys*, and ſent to all Parts as a great Dainty.

In the Day-time *Eels* hide themſelves under ſome Covert, Roots of Trees, Stocks, Stones, Bruſh-wood, Piles, Boards, or Planks about Flood-gates, Weirs, Bridges, or Mills, or in Holes in the River's Bank; and they delight in ſtill Waters, and in Waters that are foul or muddy; tho' the ſmaller *Eels* are found in all Sorts of Rivers and Soils.

Beſides the above-mentioned Way of taking them in the Night, *Eels* are caught in the Day-time by a *Ledger-bait*, by *Snigling* or *Brogling*, and by *Bobbing*.

Brogling or *Snigling* is thus performed: Get an exceeding ſtrong and long Line, and a ſmall compaſſed Hook, baited with a well-ſcoured *Red-worm*, or *Dew-worm*: Hold one End of the Line in your Hand; then place the upper End of your Hook very eaſily in the Cleft of a long Hazle-ſtick, that it may eaſily ſlip out. With this Stick and Hook thus baited, ſearch for Holes under Stones,

Tim-

Timber, Roots, or about Flood-gates, Weirs, or Piles, and put the Bait leiſurely therein. If there be a good *Eel*, give her Time, and ſhe will take it: Be ſure ſhe hath ſwallowed it, and then very leiſurely draw her out by Degrees: For ſhe lying double in her Hole, will with the Help of her Tail break all, unleſs you give Time for her to be wearied with pulling, and ſo haul her out by Degrees, not pulling too hard.

This Way of catching *Eels* is only to be practiſed when the Waters are low, and on a hot Summer's Day.

Bobbing for *Eels* is thus performed: Take the largeſt *Garden-worms* well ſcoured, and with a Needle run a ſtrong Thread through them, from End to End. In this Manner ſtring ſo many, that at laſt you may wrap them ſlackly about your Hand a dozen Times at leaſt; then tie them faſt with the two Ends of the Thread, that they may hang in ſo many long Boughts or Hanks. Faſten all to a ſmall ſtrong Cord, about two Yards long; and about a handful or eight Inches above the Worm, tie the Cord on a Knot: Then get a Lead-plumb three Quarters of a Pound Weight, ſhaped like a Pyramid, and bore a Hole thro' the Middle of this Lead from End to End, ſo as the Cord may eaſily paſs to and fro. Put the upper End of this Cord through the Plumb, (the thick End of the Plumb being downwards) and let the Plumb reſt on the Knot on the Cord above the Worms. Fix the

upper End of the Cord to a ſtrong and long Pole. Thus prepared, angle in a muddy Water, and either in the Deeps or Sides of Streams, and you will feel the *Eels* tug ſtrongly and eagerly at them. When you think they have ſwallowed the Worms as far as they can, gently draw up your Worms and *Eels*; and when you have them near the Top of the Water, hoiſt them ſuddenly to Land. Thus you may take three or four at once, and good ones too, if there be plenty.

Theſe two Ways of Snigling and Bobbing are proper only for *Eels*, no other Fiſh being to be caught after that Manner.

There is the *Conger* or great *Sea-Eel*, beſides the Sorts I have mentioned, which has a white, fat, and ſweet Fiſh; nouriſhing to Exceſs, and therefore dangerous, becauſe of Surfeits. They are firſt par-boiled in Water, with Salt and ſweet Herbs, and then broiled: Or, you may firſt par-boil them in Water and Salt, then highly ſeaſon them, and bake them in a Pot. The ſmall ones are taken between *Glouceſter* and *Tewksbury*, and below *Warrington* in *Lancaſhire*; the great Ones only in the Salt Seas.

Eel-pouts, another Fiſh ſomewhat reſembling the *Eel*, but eſteemed better, are alſo found in ſome Rivers. Their Places of Reſort are the ſame as the *Eel's*, and they are to be taken in Peals of Thunder and heavy Rain, which drives them from their Holes. The pro-

pereſt

perek Bait for them is a ſmall *Gudgeon*; and when they are large, they afford good Sport.

Some adviſe to angle for the common *Eel* upon the Grabble, with *Lobworm*, *Minnow*, or *Gudgeon*, and ſometimes you may have Sport after a Shower: But as this is not frequently practiſed, I ſhall not take any farther notice of the Methods of taking them here mentioned.

The ſlimy Eel *but little Sport can make,*
Beyond what School-boys find in Whip and Snake.
Yet after Thunder Show'rs *your Fortune try,*
With Lobworms, *and ſtrong* Lines *a large Supply,*
And while your Stock *endures, you need not fear the* Fry.

CHAP. XII.

Of the Roach *and the* Rud.

THE *Roach* is a coarſe bony Fiſh, of no great Reputation for his Taſte, and his Spawn is accounted much better than any other Part of him. As the *Carp* is called the *Water-Fox*, on Account of his Cunning, ſo the *Roach* is ſirnamed the *Water-Sheep*, for his Simplicity. His Spawning-Time is in *June*, when he is ſcabby and unwholeſome. But both he and the *Dace* recover Strength, and grow in Seaſon in a Fortnight after Spawning, as the *Barbel* and *Chub* in a Month, the

Trout in four Months, and the *Salmon* in the ſame Time, if he gets into the Sea, and afterwards into freſh Water.

Roaches are reckoned much better in the River than in a Pond, though Ponds uſually breed the biggeſt. Some Authors mention a Kind of baſtard *Roach* that breeds in Ponds, with a very forked Tail, and of a very ſmall Size, which they ſay is produced by the *Bream* and the right *Roach*. Theſe are by many thought the ſame as *Ruds*; and ſome Ponds are ſtored with them beyond Belief. They differ, ſays Mr. *Walton*, from the true *Roach*, as much as a *Herring* from a *Pilchard* and are now to be found in many Rivers.

The *Roach* is a leather-mouthed Fiſh, and has a Kind of Saw-like Teeth in his Throat. He makes an Angler excellent Sport, eſpecially if large, as many are. Both *Roach* and *Dace* bite all Day long from Sun-riſing till Sun-ſet. The chief Bait for *Roach* is *boiled Malt*, *Cadews*, *Gentles*, *white* and *red Paſte*, and ſometimes *Flies*; but if you angle for them in windy Weather, uſe the ſmall *Red-worm*. They frequent gentle Streams which are ſhallow, and will bite freely. When Winter begins to approach, they retire into the Deeps, at the End of ſtrong Currents: Here you will have Occaſion to uſe more Lead than ordinary; and conſequently a larger Float, and a ſtronger Line to bear the Lead: And here, as well as in other Places, you muſt angle about twelve Inches from the Bottom. The

Ant-

Ant-fly is another good Bait for *Roach*. They who deſire to have much Diverſion, and to take many *Roach*, are directed to gratify themſelves in the following Manner: Having provided a ſufficient Quantity of *Gentles*, go below *London-Bridge*, as far as *Shadwell*, *Ratcliff*, *Limehouſe*, or thereabouts; then take a Boat, and faſten it to the Stern of a *Collier*, or ſome other large Veſſel, which has lain ſome Time in the River, and with a ſhort Rod, and a Line not exceeding four Foot in Length, angle there; and remember to put three or four *Gentles* upon your Hook at one Time. Let your Float be twelve Inches diſtant from the Top of your Rod; and lay in your Bait as cloſe to the Stern of the Ship as you can, and let it ſwim about three Yards. This muſt be done when the Tide begins to ebb, and you will not fail of good Sport for two Hours at leaſt; and what you catch will be large.

The *Rud*, (whether the ſame with Mr. *Walton*'s baſtard *Roach*, or no, I will not determine) is however a Sort of *Roach*, but much preferable, and of a golden Colour: He is ſtrong, broad, and thick, and feeds near the Top of the Water. The principal Baits for this Fiſh are *Red-worms* and *Flies*. They will feed very generouſly, and divert the *Angler*; for they ſtruggle hard, and are very ſtrong.

The Roach *no mighty Art, no Skill require:*
Each puny Sportſman *here himſelf may tire.*

Tho' ev'n for theſe, if you would angle fine,
You'll find the Sport *beſt anſwer your Deſign.*
Your Bait *put on, they bite with eager Haſte,*
And ſwallow Cod-bait, Gentles, Flies, *or* Paſte:
Nay, Worms *in* windy Weather *they'll devour,*
Preſented ev'ry where, and ev'ry Hour.
The Rud, *a Kind of* Roach, *all ting'd with Gold,*
Strong, broad, and thick, moſt lovely to behold,
High *on the* Surface *will with Freedom bite*
At ſmall Red-worms, *or* Flies, *his like Delight.*
But Angler, if you meet him, pray take Care,
He ſtruggles long, *and breaks the ſingle Hair.*

CHAP. XIII.

Of the DACE.

THO' the *Dace* hath many Properties in common with the *Roach*, yet he merits a particular Chapter in this Book. He is a bright handſome Fiſh; ſpawns generally in *March*; loves a gravelly Scour; is very ſhy and wary like the *Trout*, and when frightened, retires into the Deeps. Beſides the Rules that are common to him and the *Roach*, theſe peculiar ones are given by a *London* Angler.

Dace are to be taken on the Surface of the Water, with a fine, nice, *artificial Fly*, and will riſe ſooner at the black, than any other Colour. If you angle upon a Scour, uſe *Gentles*, or *Paſte*; if in the Deeps, let *ſodden Malt*, or *Houſe-*

Houſe-flies be the Bait; and never ſuffer your Line, which ſhould be of a ſingle Hair, to be above two or three Foot under Water. They will alſo take the little *Red-worm*, *Cadews*, or *Graſshopper*: With the former of theſe you may uſe the ſmalleſt Float, and one Shot to poize it; and when the *Graſshopper* is your Bait, pull off the Legs, put the Point of your Hook under his Tail, and run it through and bury it in the back Part of his Head. Remember to ſtrike the *Dace* nimbly, as ſoon as ever he bites. It is proper always to conceal yourſelf as much as poſſible, if you expect any great Sport.

Dace may be alſo taken with *Fleſh-flies*, upon the Surface of the Water; into whoſe Backs, between their Wings, you muſt put your Hook, which ſhould be ſmall. They bite in the Morning and Evening. You muſt then provide a *Cane Rod*, which is the lighteſt of any: Let it be at leaſt ſeventeen Foot in Length: And your Line, which ſhould, from the Middle downwards, conſiſt of ſingle Hairs, muſt be ſomewhat longer than your Rod. You ought alſo to be furniſhed with a ſufficient Quantity of ſmall *Houſe-flies*, which keep in a Glaſs Bottle, ſtopped with a Cork. With theſe repair, eſpecially about ſeven or eight o'Clock in a Summer's Evening, to a *Mill-Stream*, and having fixed three or four Hooks with ſingle Hair-links, not above four Inches long, to your Line, bait them with the *Flies*, and angle upon the Surface of the Water on the ſmootheſt

ſmootheſt Part, at the End of the Mill-Stream. The *Dace* will riſe freely, eſpecially if the Sun does not ſhine on that Part of the Water where you caſt your Line, and you may take two or three at a Time. This Sport will continue as long as Day-light will permit you to ſee your *Flies*.

In the ſame Manner *Dace* will alſo riſe at the *Ant-fly* upon the Surface of the Water, if uſed in a Morning at the Foot of a Current, or Mill-Stream, or on the Scour before the Sun comes upon the Water.

If you angle for them upon the *Thames*, your Ground-bait muſt be made of Bran, a Cruſt of white Bread ſoaked and worked up into round Balls, with little Stones in the Middle. Take a Boat; and when you chuſe a Place let it be under the Wind, when the Water is ſmooth: Plumb the Depth, and let your Lead be eight Inches from the Bottom: Then caſt in your *Ground-bait* about four Yards above the Head of your Boat, and two or three of the Balls nearer to you, and lay in your Bait exactly over your Ground-bait. Take your Swim as long as your Rod and Line will permit, and always remember not to let it ſwim too far. When you draw it up, give a little Jerk; and when your Float ſinks, then ſtrike; but be not too eager to take your Fiſh out of the Water. This Method may alſo be obſerved in angling for *Roach*.

A *Dace* freſh taken, and ſcotched, and broiled, eats ſweeter, and is more palatable than

than a *Freſh-Herring*. *Dace* ſeldom exceed ten Inches in Length.

Having already obſerved, that *Dace* ſpawn generally in *March*, I muſt add, that ſome affirm, they ſpawn twice a Year, without ſaying in which Month they ſpawn the ſecond Time. Certain it is however, that ſmall and middle-ſized *Dace* have been taken at the latter End of *October* and Beginning of *November*, all full of Melts and Roes; and thoſe Fiſh have uſually a finer Flavour than any taken in Summer.

The two following Diſcoveries, by our modern Angler, are perhaps worth communicating in this Place: The firſt is this: If the Water be high, ſo as to riſe almoſt to the Banks of the River, then faſten to your Line an *artificial Fly*, called the *Caterpillar-fly*; then take a large *yellow Gentle*, (the yellower the better) run the Hook through the Skin of him, and draw him up to the Tail of your *artificial Fly*: This being done, whip with it on the Surface of the Water; and if you are diligent and expert, you may aſſure yourſelf of good Sport.

The ſecond Thing is, that if you angle where two Mill-Streams are going at one and the ſame Time, let it be in the Eddy between the two Streams: Firſt make uſe of your Plummet; and if the Water be deep, you muſt angle within a Foot of the Bottom, and perhaps you will find but little Sport. But if it proves to be ſhallow, that is, about the Depth of

of two Foot, or not exceeding three, then bait your Hook with three large *Gentles*: Use a *Cork-Float*, which ought not to be a Foot and a half from the Hook, and have a quick Eye to ſtrike at the very firſt Bite; for if there be any large *Dace* in the Mill-pool, they will reſort to the Eddy between the two Streams.

The ſame Gentleman obſerves farther, that if every Angler would conſider, that *Gentles* are not only the moſt univerſal, but alſo the moſt alluring Bait, they would always carry ſome of them with them. He affirms, he has taken *Trout* with *Gentles*, when every Kind of *Worm* has been refuſed, and *artificial Flies* rejected: And even to all ſorts of Freſh-water or River Fiſh, *Pike* and *Salmon* excepted, they have proved an acceptable Bait; nor does he doubt but they would be ſo to them, could it be ſo contrived, as to fix them upon a Hook that could hold either *Salmon* or *Pike*.

The Silver Dace, *no deſpicable Fiſh,*
May pleaſe the Angler both in Sport and Diſh.
In Summer *on the* Scours *the Wanton lies,*
And, if unſeen, he all Day long *will riſe:*
But ne'er ſo gameſome, ne'er ſo briſk before,
Once ſeen *he flies you, and will riſe* no more.
Behind ſome Covert *then thyſelf conceal,*
And with the Fleſh-fly *thou wilt ſeldom fail.*
Floats *uſeleſs are, unleſs the* Worm *you try,*
And with the riſing Flaſh ſucceſsfully
Deſcend the Stream; then any Thing *he takes,*
And, like the Trout, *but ſmall Diſtinction makes.*

CHAP.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the GUDGEON.

THE *Gudgeon* is a Fiſh of excellent Taſte, and reputed to be very wholſome; has a fine Shape, is of a ſilver Colour, and beautified with black Spots both on his Body and Tail. The whiter he is, the better; and, when in Perfection, he well deſerves the Name of the *River-Smelt*. He breeds in *March* or *April*; ſome ſay two or three Times in the Year, and always in the Summer. He is commended for a Fiſh of excellent Nouriſhment, eaſy of Digeſtion, and increaſing good Blood. He delights in ſandy gravelly Bottoms, gentle Streams, and ſmall Rivers. He feeds on the Ground, and there feaſts himſelf in ſharp Streams, and on the Gravel. He and the *Barbel* reſemble each other in this, neither of which hunt for Flies at any Time, as moſt other Fiſhes do. He is an excellent Fiſh to enter a young Angler, being eaſy to be taken with a ſmall *Red-worm*, on, or very near to, the Ground.

When you angle for him in Shallows, ſtir the Ground or Sand with a Pole, to make them come together. He bites all Day from the End of *March* till *Michaelmas*, but ſeldom in cold Weather, after a Flood, or the Dark. *Gilt-tails* and *Brandlings* are his chief Baits. He is one of thoſe leather-mouthed Fiſh that has

has his Teeth in his Troat, and will hardly be loſt off from the Hook when once ſtruck.

Gudgeons are uſually ſcattered up and down every River in the Shallows in the Heat of Summer: But in *Autumn*, when the Weeds begin to grow ſour or rot, and the Weather colder, they gather together, and get into the deeper Parts of the Water; and are to be fiſhed for with your Hook always touching the Ground, if you uſe a Float or a Cork: But many will fiſh for the *Gudgeon* by Hand, with a running Line upon the Ground, without a Cork; and it is an excellent Way, if you have a gentle Rod, and as gentle a Hand. Be not too haſty with him when he bites, for he ſometimes only nibbles the Bait.

Gudgeons will take *Gentles*, or the *Cow-dung Bob*; but the ſmall *Red-worm* is what pleaſes them beſt. If you can find a Bridge or Plank over a ſmall River, chuſe to angle underneath for *Gudgeons*; for they love the Shade; and are ſo far from being ſhy, that you may not only appear in Sight, but if you drive them from their Place of Reſort, they will immediately return. A ſingle Hair Line, a fine taper Rod, a Float, and a ſmall Hook, is what moſt uſe, and the Bait to drag upon the Ground. In fine:

Tho' little Art the Gudgeon *may ſuffice,*
His Sport *is good, and with the greateſt vies.*
Few Leſſons *will the Angler's Uſe ſupply,*
Where he's ſo ready of himſelf to die.

For

For, if no Heats *or* Flaſhes *interpoſe,*
His Prize *he'll hold, and* yours *you cannot loſe.*

CHAP. XV.

Of the POPE, *or* RUFF.

THE *Pope*, by many called a *Ruff*, is not known to be in ſome Rivers. He is much like the *Perch* for his Shape, and taken to be better; but will not grow to be bigger than a large *Gudgeon*. He is all over rough, and hath ſharp or prickly Fins. His Colour is brown and duſkiſh above; but a pale yellow underneath. A double Courſe of Circles marks him by the Jaws. There is a Line goes along his Back, faſtened as it were to the Body with a Croſs-thread. His Fins, which he erects when angry, and Tail, are ſpotted with black Spots. No Fiſh that ſwims is of a pleaſanter Taſte; and he is alſo excellent to enter a young Angler, for he is a greedy Biter. They uſually lie Abundance of them together, in one reſerved Place, where the Water is deep, and runs quietly. And an eaſy Angler, if he has found where they lie, may catch forty or fifty, or ſometimes twice as many at a Standing. You may even angle with two or three Hooks, and pull up the ſame Number of Fiſhes at a Throw.

You muſt fiſh for him with a ſmall *Redworm*, or a *Gentle*; and if you bait the Ground with Earth, it is excellent. Uſe a Float, and

angle

angle as for a *Perch*. The River *Yare* in *Norfolk* is almoſt peculiar for Plenty of *Ruffs*, and therefore I conclude with only four Lines.

A bold free Fiſh, the Perch-reſembling Ruff,
When found their Haunts, *will furniſh Sport enough*;
The tempting Bait *at no Time will refuſe*,
But Gentles *chief, and little* Red-worms *chuſe*.

CHAP. XVI.

Of the BLEAK.

THE *Bleak*, or *freſh-water Sprat*, is ever in Motion, and therefore called by ſome the *River-Swallow*: For as we obſerve the *Swallow* moſt Evenings in Summer to be ever in Motion, making ſhort and quick Turns when he endeavours to catch Flies in the Air; ſo does the *Bleak* at the Top of the Water. His Back is of a pleaſant ſad, or Sea-water Green; his Belly white, and ſhining as the Mountain-Snow: And doubtleſs, ſays Mr. *Walton*, (upon a Preſumption that our *Bleaks* and *Anchovies* are the ſame Fiſh) though he have the Fortune to be neglected, yet the *Bleak* ought to be much valued, though we want the Skill the *Italians* have to turn them into *Anchovies*. This Fiſh may be caught with a Paſter-noſter Line, that is, ſix or eight very ſmall Hooks tied along the Line, half a Foot, or three or four Inches, one above the other.

other. Five or ſix may be caught thus at one Time, if you bait with *Gentles*, than which nothing is better. You may angle deeper for them in the *Thames* than in any other River.

Or this Fiſh may be caught with a fine artificial Fly, of a ſad brown Colour, very ſmall, and the Hook anſwerable. There is no better Sport than whipping for *Bleaks* in a Boat, or on a Bank in the ſwift Water in a Summer's Evening, with a Hazle-top, about five or ſix Foot long, and a Line twice the Length of the Rod.

There are (if any Credit may be given to Report) many who in *Italy* will catch *Swallows* thus, but more eſpecially *Martens*. This Bird-Angler ſtands on the Top of a Steeple to do it, and with a Line twice as long as I have ſpoken of. A *Hern*, that conſtantly frequented one Place, has been caught flying, with a Hook baited with a big Minnow or ſmall *Gudgeon*. The Line and Hook muſt be ſtrong, and tied to ſome looſe Staff, ſo big that ſhe cannot fly away with it, and the Line not exceeding two Yards.

The *Sea-Bleak* is preferred to the River, becauſe the latter are ſaid to be ſometimes mad in Summer, by Reaſon of a Worm in their Stomachs. *Gentles*, the *Dub-Fly*, and the ſame Baits as are good for *Roach*, will ſucceed with the *Bleak*. But the *Fly* yields the greateſt Pleaſure, and therefore that alone is remembered in our Verſes.

The

The Bleak *ſmall* Flies *upon the Surface takes,*
And ſeldom the leaſt Heſitation makes.
With an obſerving Eye, and curious Hand,
In little Time you Numbers *may command.*

CHAP. XVII.

Of the Minnow *or* Penk, *the* Loach, *the* Bull-head *or* Miller's-thumb, *and the* Stickle-bag.

THERE are in our freſh Waters three or four other Sorts of little Fiſhes, which, tho' for their Minuteneſs they may be hardly thought worth mentioning, may ſome of them, for the Delicacy of their Fleſh, be compared with any of the larger Species. They are uſually full of Spawn all the Summer Months, and breed often, like ſome of the ſmaller Sorts of Quadrupedes; and when the Eggs are thus animated, they ſoon arrive to their full Growth and Perfection. It is providential that they breed both often and numerouſly; for beſides other Accidents, they are both a Prey and Bait for other Fiſh.

The *Minnow*, when in perfect Seaſon, and not ſick, which is only preſently after Spawning, has a kind of dappled or waved Colour, like a Panther, on his Sides, inclining to a greeniſh and ſky Colour; his Belly being milk-white, and his Back almoſt black or blackiſh. He is a ſharp Biter at a ſmall Worm, and in hot Weather makes excellent Sport

Sport for young Anglers, or for Boys and Women that love that Recreation.

The *Minnow* appears first in *March*, continues till *Michaelmas*, and then betakes himself to the Mud, Weeds, or Wood in Rivers; to secure himself from Floods, devouring Trouts, and other Fishes of Prey.

He least frequents deep, still Places, where *Trouts* or great Fish ply; neither stirs in the Night, nor in dark windy Weather, for fear of becoming a Prey to his Enemies, who at such Times principally bite and range about for Food. His most usual Time is from an Hour after Sun-rising, if the Day prove fair, till an Hour before Sun-set. His Baits are chiefly small *Red-worms*, *Gilt-tail*, *Brandling*, *Cod-bait*, and the like. He is caught either at Mid-water, or near, or close to the Bottom. Use a Float in angling for him.

The *Loach* is a pleasant Fish, light, delicate in Taste, wholesome, and of excellent Nutriment; breeding and feeding in clear swift Brooks or Rills, living in the sharpest Streams, and on the Gravel, and often under Stones. He something resembles an *Eel* in Shape, and the Females are in the Summer often full of Spawn. They are always caught on the Bottom, the Bait touching the Ground, and their best Baits are the small *Red-worm*, *Gilt-tail*, or *Meadow-worm*.

The *Loach* grows not to above a Finger's Length, and no thicker than is suitable to that Length. He has a Beard or Wattels like a

Bar-

Barbel. He has two Fins on his Sides, four at his Belly, and one at his Tail. He is dappled with many black or brown Spots, and his Mouth is, *Barbel*-like, under his Nose.

The *Miller's-thumb*, or *Bull-head*, is a Fish of no pleasing Form, being compared to the *Sea-toad-fish*, for Similitude of Shape. He has a Head big and flat, much greater than suitable to his Body; a Mouth very wide, and usually gaping. He is without Teeth, but his Lips are very rough, like a Fly. He hath two Fins near his Gills, roundish or crested, two under the Belly, two on the Back, one below the Vent, and the Fin of his Tail is round. Nature hath painted the Body of this Fish with whitish, blackish, and brownish Spots. The Females are usually full of Eggs or Spawn all the Summer, which swell their Vents almost into the Form of a Dug. They begin to spawn about *April*. In the Winter, the *Minnow*, the *Loach*, and the *Bull-head*, dwell in the Mud like the *Eel*.

In Summer, the *Bull-head* hides himself in Holes, or amongst Stones in clear Water; and in very hot Days will lie a long Time very still, and sun himself, being easily seen upon any flat Stone or Gravel. He will then suffer an Angler to put a Hook baited with a small *Worm* very near his Mouth, and he never refuses to bite, nor indeed to be caught with the worst of Anglers.

There is also a little Fish called a *Sticklebag*, without Scales, which hath his Body guarded with

with ſeveral Prickles. He is good for nothing in Summer, his only Seaſon, but to make Sport for Boys and Women-Anglers, and to feed Fiſh of Prey, as *Trouts* in particular, who will bite at him as at a *Minnow*, or better, if your Hook be rightly baited with him: For he may be ſo hung, as that his Tail whirling like the Sail of a Wind-mill, will make him turn more quick than any *Minnow* can. And it is the nimble Turning of the Bait that is the Perfection of *Minnow-Fiſhing*. Put your Hook into his Mouth, and out at his Tail; and then having firſt tied him with white Thread a little above his Tail, and placed him after ſuch a Manner on your Hook as he may be diſpoſed to turn, ſew up his Mouth to your Line. If you put him on dexterouſly, ſo that he turns quick, he will tempt any *Trout*: And you may alter his Poſition on the Line, till you bring him to this. The *Loach* will have the ſame Effect, if not too big.

To conclude the Hiſtory of our River Fiſhes:

The Minnow, *Flatt'rer-like, is ever nigh,*
The Angler's Plague, for Baits *a good Supply.*
To catch the Sticklebag *each School-boy knows,*
And Loach, *and* Bull-heads, *which for* Baits *are choſe,*
And bite as often as the Angler throws.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of Local Fiſhes, or thoſe which are peculiar to certain Waters.

THO' I have done with all our *freſh Water-Fiſh* that are common to Anglers, I might be thought inexcuſable were I to omit the *Char* and the *Guiniad*, which, though they can fall in the Way of very few Sportſmen, have been mentioned and deſcribed by the beſt Authors who have writ on Angling. I call them *local Fiſh*, becauſe they are never found but in particular *Standing Waters*, notwithſtanding that thoſe Waters have a Communication with Rivers.

The *Char* is found in *Lancaſhire*, in a Mere called *Winander-Mere*; which, according to *Cambden*, is the largeſt Mere or ſtanding Water in this Nation, being ten Miles in Length. Some ſay it is as ſmooth at the Bottom as if it were paved with poliſhed Marble. The *Char* never exceeds fifteen or ſixteen Inches in Length. It is ſpotted like a *Trout*, and has ſcarce a Bone but on the Back. I do not know whether it makes the Angler any great Sport, but it is univerſally thought a very delicate Fiſh, and deſerves to be taken notice of, becauſe it is a Rarity, and of ſo high Eſteem.

The *Guiniad*, according to the ſame *Cambden*, and others, is peculiar to *Pemble-Mere* in *Cheſhire*. The River *Dee*, ſays this Author, which runs by *Cheſter*, ſprings in *Merioneth-ſhire*,

shire, and as it runs toward *Chester*, it passes through the said *Pemble* Mere, which is a large Water: And it is observed, that tho' the River *Dee* abounds with *Salmon*, and *Pemble* Mere with the *Guiniad*, yet there is never any *Salmon* caught in the Mere, nor any *Guiniad* in the River.

It is observed of *Winander* Mere, where the *Char* are found, that in the deepest Parts, none of the Lines or Nets which Anglers commonly use, can reach the Bottom of it: Some say that this Fish is found also in *Coningston* Mere, which is not far from the other; but then it is supposed that they are carried thither from *Winander* Mere, perhaps through both of their respective Rivers, which enter the Sea at one Mouth. This is not improbable, since though the *Char* never stays, so as to be taken, out of Standing Water, he may easily bear with such a Voyage, out of what may justly enough be called his proper Element. Dr. *Leigh* says, the *Char* in *Coningston* Mere are better than those in *Winander* Mere; but there are Reasons to think that he was prejudiced in this Article.

There is a Pool in *Caernarvonshire*, called *Limperis-Pool*, which breeds a peculiar Kind of Fish, to be seen no where else, called by the Inhabitants a *Tor-coch*. I meet with no other Description of him, but that his Belly is reddish. And about *Fornby* in *Lancashire*, there are little Fishes caught in a black Water under the Turfs.

I might have reſerved the *Ruff* or *Pope* to be ſpoken of in this Chapter, had not Cuſtom prevailed to the contrary: For though there are *Ruffs* found in many other Rivers, none are equal to thoſe of the *Yare* in *Norfolk*. The ſame Thing is obſerved of *Lampreys*, which in the *Severn* excel thoſe of the *Thames*, and every other River: And the *Mullet*, (a Sea-Fiſh to be ſpoken of in the next Chapter) when he leaves the ſalt Water, is very nice in his Choice of freſh. Alſo the *Grayling*, before deſcribed, is no where ſo plenty as in the *Dove* in *Derbyſhire*. But I have done with a Subject that can be of ſo little Uſe to the Angler, who need only remember, That,

The Char *and* Guiniad *never change their Shires,*
But live in Winander *and* Pemble *Meres.*

CHAP. XIX.

Of Flounders, Mullets, *and* Smelts.

I Come now to certain Species of Fiſh, which, though bred in the Sea, and properly Inhabitants of the ſalt Water, are yet frequently taken in our Rivers, eſpecially in ſome of them: And theſe are principally *Flounders*, *Mullets*, and *Smelts*.

Flook

Flook or *Flounders* are firm and good Fiſh; ſo innocent in their Nature, and ſo nutritive, that Phyſicians order them to be given to ſick Perſons, when their Stomachs cannot digeſt any other Food. On ſuch Occaſions, thoſe which frequent and are taken in the freſh Water Rivers, are eſteemed beſt. They are in Seaſon all the Year, except the Time of their Spawning, which is from the latter End of *June* to the Middle of *July*; and then they are ſick, flabby, and unwholſome. At ſuch a Juncture, if any of them be taken, you may perceive ſmall Worms about the Length of half an Inch, and in ſome the Length of an Inch, which have made a Bed for themſelves in the Backs of the Fiſh.

Flounders are a ſhy and wary Fiſh, and feed at Bottom: Their common and moſt delightful Places of Reſort, are the Sides of Sand-banks, caſt up by Mill-ſtreams or Weirs, or by ſtrong Eddies. Sometimes they are found at the Tail of Mill-ſtreams, or at a more remote Diſtance from them, in deep Waters, under or cloſe to the Bank-Sides, eſpecially if the Bottom be Sand or Gravel, and has a Declivity. If you find a Hole in a River, which looks ever ſo likely, and there is Mud at the Bottom, it will be loſt Labour to angle therein; for the leaſt Mud or Filth choaks *Flounders*.

As they are greedy and voracious, they will bite at any *Red-worm*: But the *Lobworm*, as it is the largeſt, will entice them ſooneſt, pro-

vided it be well ſcoured. The uſual Way o Angling for them, is to lie upon the Grabble that is, to put ſo much Lead upon your Line about twelve or fourteen Inches diſtant fro your Hook, that it may keep it ſteady a Bottom, the Fait having Liberty to be twirle about by the Water.

If you uſe a Float, let it lie upon the Sur face; and when it firſt cocks up, and is af terwards drawn under Water, you may the conclude that the *Flounder* has taken, or taking your Bait. Remember to allow hi Time; for he will ſuck all the *Worm* into hi Mouth before he gorges it. The Hook whic you uſe cannot be too ſmall, if you can ge your Bait upon it.

The beſt *Plaice* have the blackeſt Spots o their Body, and the beſt *Flounders* the reddeſ As the *Flounder* is a Fiſh without Scales, he i not eaten by the *Jews*. He bites all the Day from Sun-riſe until Sun-ſet, in *April*, *May*, *June*, *July*, and Part of *Auguſt*.

Mullets are a ſalt Water Fiſh, well-taſted, delicate, and much admired. During th Summer-Seaſon they come into the River which lie contiguous with the Sea, as often a the Tide flows. Great Plenty of them ma be taken with an Angle Rod, which, as wel as the Line, muſt be ſtrong.

They will riſe, like a *Trout* or *Salmon*, a a *artificial Fly*, which muſt be larger tha what is uſed for the *Trout*; and they will alſ take a *Worm* under Water, if you angle abou

two

two Foot from the Bottom. They are wonderfully shy and wary, but feed as freely as any Fish, and will afford much Sport and Diversion. They abound chiefly along the Southern and South-west Parts of *England*, which lie opposite to *France*. The River *Aron* in *Sussex*, at *Arundel*, and *Ax* in the County of *Devon*, about two Miles below the Town of *Axminster*, yield vast Quantities of them every Time the Tide flows.

Smelts are a fine Fish, with a delicate Flavour, and are in Season twice a Year. They make their first Appearance about the Middle of *March*, when the best are taken at *Chelsea* and *Hammersmith*. At the second Time of their coming into the River *Thames*, which is in the Month of *August*, they seldom reach higher than *London-Bridge*; and the finest and largest are then taken opposite to *Deptford* and *Greenwich*. In angling for them, use the *Pater-noster* Line of one Hair, and let your Bait be *Gentles* or *white Paste*.

The Angler's *Art, oft' by the* Flounder *felt,*
The Mullet *luscious, and the fragrant* Smelt,
Extends beyond the native River Fry,
For Flook *with* Worms, *for* Mullet *with* Dub-fly:
For Smelts, *your* Gentles *are the best Supply.*

CHAP. XX.

Of Fiſh taken on the Rocks, and at Sea.

WE are aſſured, (for I never practiſed this Sport myſelf,) that there are but four Sorts of Fiſh which are generally taken by Rock-fiſhing, namely *Sea Bream*, *Flounders*, *Whiting-Pollock*, and *Rock-Whiting*.

Sea Breams are not ſo broad and flat, nor altogether ſo large as *River Breams*, when full grown, ſeldom exceeding twelve or fourteen Inches at moſt; but then they are fuller-bodied, more plump and thick, and inclinable to be round. Their Colour is generally a pale Red, which turns to a deeper Red when they are dreſs'd. They are well-taſted, but full of Bones; and this may be the Reaſon why ſome People account them a coarſe Fiſh. They afford good Diverſion in the Water, and the larger Sort will try the Skill and Judgment of the Fiſherman. They are not proper to be eaten by thoſe who have a weak Stomach; for though they are nouriſhing and ſtrengthening, yet they are not eaſily digeſted.

There is very little, if any real Diſtinction between the *River Flounders*, and thoſe taken in the Salt-water; the former coming originally from the Sea. However, by continuing in freſh Water, they become firmer, and better taſted, than thoſe which are taken in the ſalt Water. This may be eaſily proved, by comparing

paring the *Flounders* which are caught beyond the *Buoy-in-the-Nore*, with thoſe taken in the *Thames* above Bridge, or in the Rivers which run into the *Thames*. However, the ſalt Water *Flounders* are much larger than thoſe of the freſh Water, and are eſteemed by ſome to be equally as good: And, in Fact, it would puzzle the niceſt Palate, to diſtinguiſh the one from the other when dreſſed. As all this Species of Fiſh, if large, draw a great deal of Water, on account of their Shape, ſo the ſalt Water *Flounders* will afford good Sport.

The *Whiting Pollock* is ſomewhat round in the Body, and is well-taſted, nouriſhing, and as fleaky as *Cod*. It ſeldom exceeds twelve Inches in Length, and in Colour is a darkiſh Grey. It ſtruggles hard when hooked; and, by making a long Defence for its Life, makes alſo much Diverſion for the Fiſherman.

The *Rock Whiting* is a Species of the *Whiting* and *Whiting Pollock*, but differs from both, and yet is often palmed upon the Ignorant for true *Whiting*. It is not altogether of ſuch a Dark-grey as the *Whiting Pollock*, nor ſo bright in Colour as the *Whiting*. Its chief Place of Reſidence is among the Rocks, from whence it takes Part of its Name. It affords good Nouriſhment, is eaſy of Digeſtion, and agrees with weak Stomachs. It makes but an indifferent Defence for its Life, and conſequently not much Sport for the Fiſherman. It is well-

taſted; and as to its Size, is much the ſame with the *Whiting*.

Theſe are the different Sorts of Fiſh, which are generally taken at Rock-fiſhing; though it often happens that large *Crabs* are taken the ſame Way.

The Fiſh taken the other Way, by *Sea-fiſhing* in a Boat, are uſually the common *Whiting*, and the *Haddock*. The former are well known to be moſt innocent, pleaſant Food, and are ſo common as not to want any Deſcription. As to the *Haddock*, it ſo much reſembles the *Cod*, eſpecially when full grown, as ſometimes to be ſold for it to the Ignorant. It is a well-taſted nutritious Fiſh, tho' reputed coarſe: And, if we may credit the Monkiſh Legends, it was this Fiſh that the Apoſtle *Peter* caught, at his Maſter's Command, with the Piece of Money in his Mouth to pay Tribute. The two black Spots under his Gills, which, the Monks ſay, are the Marks of the Apoſtle's Finger and Thumb, were what gave riſe to this fabulous Impoſition, in an Age when Religion conſiſted of little elſe. Small *Haddocks* are often ſold for large *Whitings*.

There is alſo Fiſhing at Sea when a Ship is under ſail, for *Cod*, *Mackarel*, and large *Haddocks*: And a Method of taking *Shrimps* and *Prawns*, which gives ſome Diverſion on the Sea-ſhore: But I leave the Particulars of theſe Things to the other Part of this Book, which will treat of the *Practice of Angling*.

The

The Bream, *the* Flounder, *Fiſhermen re-*
port,
The darkiſh Whiting *of each baſtard Sort,*
Upon the Rocks *afford the Angler Sport.*
At Sea, *the* Haddock *and true* Whiting *oft,*
In Boats; in Ships, the Cod *and* Mack'rel
ſoft,
With well-requited Pains he hauls aloft.

End of the SECOND PART.

THE

British ANGLER.

PART the THIRD.

Teaching the whole Practice of Angling.

CHAP. I.

General Obſervations regarding the Angler and his Sport.

THO' I have mentioned almoſt every Thing in the ſeveral Chapters of the *Second Part*, concerning the *reſpective Fiſh* there treated of; yet it is neceſſary the *young Angler* ſhould have ſome more general Inſtructions, thrown miſcellaneouſly together, concerning his own *Conduct*, the *Haunts* and *Feed* of

of *Fiſhes*, the proper *Seaſons* of *Angling*, and the *Practice* of every particular *Species of it*. To theſe I ſhall add ſeveral Obſervations upon *Rivers*, particularly the *Thames*; Directions for making a *Fiſh-pond*; Rules for *dreſſing* the various Sorts of Fiſh, with ſuch other Particulars as may be expected in a Book of this Nature. It is poſſible I may repeat ſome Things that have been before ſpecified; but I rather chuſe that Method, than to omit any Particular that may be of Service to my young Pupils.

To begin with the *Angler* himſelf, let his Apparel not be of a *light* or *ſhining* Colour, which will reflect upon the Water, and fright away the Fiſh, but let it be of a *dark-brown* Colour, and ſit cloſe to his Body. *Fiſh* are terrified with any the leaſt Sight or Motion: Therefore, by all means, keep out of Sight, when you angle in a clear Water, either by ſheltering behind ſome Buſh or Tree, or by ſtanding as far off the River's Side, as you can poſſibly. To effect this the better, a long Rod at Ground, and a long Rod and Line at artificial Fly, are abſolutely neceſſary. Neither ought you to move much on the Banks, next the Water you angle in, eſpecially for *Trouts*, *Chubs*, or *Carps*.

When you angle at *Ground* in a clear Water, or dibble with natural Flies, angle up the River; but in muddy Water, or with Dub-fly, angle down the River.

Be-

Before you ſet out to angle, ſee that your Baits be good, ſweet, fine, agreeable to the River and Seaſon, and proper for the Fiſh you deſign to angle for: Likewiſe, that your Tackle be ſuitable and neat; for, if otherwiſe, you had better continue at home, becauſe you will not only tire and weary yourſelf, but loſe your Labour, which to a young Angler will be no ſmall Diſcouragement.

When you have hooked a great Fiſh, let him play and tire himſelf within the Water; and have ſpecial Care to keep the Rod bent, leſt he run to the End of the Line, and break either Hook or Hold. Hale him not too near the Top of the Water, leſt by flouncing he break your Line.

Where any *Weeds*, *Roots* of *Trees*, *Stones*, *Wood*, or other Rubbiſh are, it is often good, but troubleſome Angling: For to ſuch Places Fiſh reſort for Warmth and Security. The ſame may be ſaid of *Whirl-pools*, which are like Pits in Rivers, and ſeldom unfurniſhed of good Fiſh. Likewiſe at *Weirs*, *Weir-pools*, *Mill-ſtreams*, *Piles*, *Poſts*, and *Pillars* of Bridges, *Flood-gates*, *Cataracts*, and *Falls* of *Waters*; the *Conflux* of Rivers, the *Eddies* betwixt two Streams, the *Returns* of a Stream, and the *Sides* of a Stream, are good Places generally to angle in.

In the *Summer* all Fiſh uſually lie in the more ſhallow Part of the River, ſome in a ſtrong and ſwift, others in a gentle Stream, except *Carp*, *Tench*, and *Eel*. But in *Winter* all

all fly into the deep, ſtill Places. Where it ebbs and flows Fiſh ſometimes bite beſt, in the Ebb eſpecially; but rarely at full Water, unleſs near the Arches of Bridges, Weirs, or Flood-gates.

There is no Difference in Angling in any Part of a Pool, or ſtanding Water; for it is a Priſon to all Fiſh, and they are therefore the ſooner taken: But in Rivers, the beſt Angling is where it is deep and clear at the Bottom; eſpecially if it be a Gravel or Clay, without Mud or Weeds; and if there is a Whirling or Turning in the Water, or a Covert, as a hollow Bank, great Roots of Trees, or long Weeds floating above the Water, where the Fiſh may hide themſelves at certain Times.

Rivers that are *ſtrait* and *level* are not ſo good to fiſh in, as thoſe that are *crooked*, and have many Corners and Turnings, Pools and Pits: For Fiſh get into thoſe Creeks and Channels, and hide themſelves in their private Apartments. If the Water be narrow you may fiſh on both Sides, and the ſooner chop upon them; but where broad and deep their Haunt is uncertain. In a Word,

The fearful Cheven *loves the ſhaded Stream*;
Sharp Rills delight the Trout, *and Pools the* Bream:
In Deeps the ſpeckled Samlet *loves to rove,*
And marly Swifts allure the Barbel *Drove:*

Un-

Unwary Roach *the ſandy Bottom chuſe,*
And Carp *the Weeds, and* Eels *the muddy Ooze.*

When any Fiſh have taken the Hook from you, if it be not ſwallowed into their Gorge, they will live: Either the Water will cauſe it to ruſt, and in Time wear away; or the Fiſh will go to the Bottom, and there root like a Hog on the Gravel, till they either rub it out, or break the Hook in the Middle.

Caſt into ſuch Places where you uſe to angle, once a Week at leaſt, all Sorts of *Corn* boiled ſoft, *Ale-grains*, or *Wheat-bran* ſteeped in Blood, *Blood* dried and cut to Pieces, *Snails*, *Worms* chopt into Pieces, Pieces of *Fowl* or *Beaſt's Guts*, Guts of *Fowl*, *Beaſt's Livers* cut into Pieces, *Oat-cake* or *Cheeſe* chewed, ground *Malt*, &c. When you angle for *Carp*, *Tench*, *Chub*, *Roch*, *Dace*, *Barbel* and *Bream*, you cannot feed too often or too much. This Courſe draws the Fiſh to the Place you deſire, and there keeps them together. Caſt alſo in a few Grains of ground Malt or Beans, now and then, as you angle, or chewed Oat-cake or Cheeſe.

Your Feed for Fiſh muſt always reſt in that very Place, where you mean to angle, and that your Bait may come to: Therefore, by no means, when you angle in a Stream, caſt them in at your Hook, but ſomething above where you angle, leſt the Stream carry them beyond the Hook; and ſo inſtead of inviting them

them to you, you allure them beyond you. Close the Malt or Ale-grains so fast in Handfuls, that if possible the Water may not part it with the Fall. All Sorts of Baits are good to cast in, whilst you are angling with that particular Bait, especially *Cod-baits*, *Gentles*, *Wasps*, and *Paste*. You will find them snap up that on the Hook the more eagerly, and with less Suspicion.

If you angle at any Place you have twice or thrice baited, and find no Sport, if none has been there before you, or no grand Impediment in the Season or Water appear, you may be assured that either *Pike* or *Perch*, if they breed in that River, have taken up their Quarters there, and scared all the other Fish from thence, for fear of becoming their Prey. Your only Remedy is presently to angle for them, with suitable Tackle and Baits; and when they are caught, the others will repossess themselves of their former Station.

To know what *Bait* and *Fly* any Fish will take, the first you catch of that Kind rip up his Belly, and you may then see his Stomach, lying from the Gills to the small Guts: Take it out very tenderly, and, with a sharp Penknife, cut it open, without bruising, and you will find his Food within it, and thereby discover what Bait at that very Instant he takes best, whether Flies or Ground-baits, and so fit them accordingly. And if you have a good Microscope, you may, with Pleasure and Delight, easily

eaſily diſcover the very true Colour, Proportion and Shape of the Fly. Some can even do it pretty well without a Glaſs.

Keep the *Sun*, or the *Moon*, if you angle at Night, before you, provided your Eyes can endure it: At leaſt, be ſure to have thoſe Planets on your Side; for if they are on your Back, both yourſelf and Rod will, by the Shadow, give Offence; and every Creature ſees farther and clearer, when it looks towards the Light, than the contrary.

All Fiſh whatever, that ſwim in clear Rivers, are wholſomer, pleaſanter, and far better taſted than thoſe of the ſame Kind, that live in Pits, Ponds, Mears, and ſtanding Waters.

A Hog-back and a little Head, either to *Trout*, *Salmon*, or any other Fiſh, are a Sign they are in Seaſon. All Sorts of Fiſh that have *Scales* on their Bodies, conſtantly ſwim together, in Troops and Companies, as the *Roach*, *Dace*, *Chub*, *Gudgeon*, &c. The Females of moſt Fiſh are larger than the Males.

Let all Baits and Flies whatſoever fall gently firſt into the Water, before any other Part of the Line, with as little of the Line as poſſible, and without any Diſturbance, Plunging, or Circling of the Water, which mightily ſcares and frightens Fiſh.

Roach and *Dace* recover Strength, and grow in Seaſon within a Fortnight after ſpawning; *Barbel* and *Chub* within a Month; *Trout*, in four

four Months; and the *Salmon* in like Time, if he get into the Sea, and afterwards into freſh Water.

Angle always, if you can, on the *Lee-Shore*; and obſerve, that Fiſh lie or ſwim nearer the Bottom, and in deeper Water in Winter than in Summer. They alſo get near the Bottom in any cold Day, and on the calm Side of the Water: And in the Winter they are caught beſt at the Mid Time of the Day, and in Sun-ſhiny Weather.

When you put any living Baits on the Hook, bruiſe them as little as poſſible, that they may live long on the Hook after baited.

As to the Baits for particular Fiſh, I have ſaid enough of that already; only the Angler will do well to remember theſe four Lines:

The Fly to Trouts, *to* Bream *the wormy Snare,*
Are ſtrong Allurements; Gentles to the Dare:
The Cheven, *Cadews*, Pike, *the leſſer Fry*
Invite; thus variouſly the various Species die.

Let him that would be a *compleat Angler*, ſpend ſome Time in all Sorts of Waters, Ponds, Rivers, ſwift and ſlow, ſtony, pebbly, gravelly, ſandy, muddy, chalky, and ſlimy; and obſerve the Differences in the Nature of the Soils and Ground on which they run or ſtand; and likewiſe the Nature and Humour of each particular Fiſh, Water, and Bait. By this Means a Man may become a perfect and judicious Artiſt, and be able to take

take Fiſh where-ever he angles; there being always much Difference between ſwift, ſlow, and ſtanding Waters.

Some adviſe, that the Angler, when he takes Store of Fiſh, ſhould obſerve the Age of the Moon: But I cannot help thinking there is ſome Superſtition in this. However, it will certainly not be amiſs to remark the Temperature of the preceding Night, and the Darkneſs, Brightneſs, or Windineſs of it; the Seaſon and Nature of the Morning and Day, together with the Temperature of the Air, the Water and Wind, and all other precedent, concomitant, natural, or adventitious Advantages, that could any ways conduce to his Sport: And likewiſe, on the contrary, all Things that he finds to be Obſtacles and Obſtructions of his Paſtime. Let him enter theſe methodically in a Book, by referring to which, with a little Practice, he will be able to raiſe Concluſions for the Improvement of this Art.

In all Sorts of Angling, be ſure to keep out of the Fiſhes Sight, and as far off the River's Bank as poſſible, unleſs you angle in a muddy Water, and then you may approach nearer.

Several Counties alter the *Time*, and almoſt the *Manner* of Fiſhes Breeding, but eſpecially the Time of their being in *Seaſon*; as in the River *Wye*, in *Monmouthſhire*, *Salmon* are in Seaſon from *September* to *April*; but in the *Thames*, *Trent*, and moſt other Rivers, they are in Seaſon almoſt all the ſix hot Months.

When

When you angle for *Perch*, *Chub*, *Tench*, *Carp*, *Dace*, *Bream*, *Gudgeon*, and *Ruff*, and have hooked one who after makes his Eſcape, you will not often have any great Sport at that Standing for one or two Hours after ſuch Misfortune, becauſe the Fiſh is ſo frighted, that he chaſes his Companions out of that Place. Therefore after ſome Trial, it is beſt to remove, and angle at ſome other Standing.

All Fiſh are of a cold and moiſt Temperature; but ſome of the ſame Species exceed others in Goodneſs, according to the Nature of the Water, and Places wherein they live. *Sea-Fiſh* are accounted better than thoſe in freſh Water, as being more ſavoury, and of a firmer Subſtance, hotter and drier, and not ſo viſcous, clammy, and ſlimy, as the freſh Water Fiſh. Of Sea-Fiſh, thoſe that have *Scales* and firm Subſtances, are beſt, and ſuch as are incloſed in *Shells*, as Oiſters, Lobſters, and Crabs. Fiſh that live in *pure Water* toſſed to and fro with Waves, are better than thoſe that live in calm and muddy Waters, that are little agitated; and thoſe that live near ſandy rocky Shores, are better than where there is much Slime and Mud. But Fiſh are generally the fatteſt, though not the ſweeteſt, that are fed in muddy, weedy Rivers.

When you angle for any Sort of Fiſh, be ſure that That Fiſh be then in Seaſon: Elſe your Labour is intirely loſt; for Fiſh out of Seaſon are the worſt Sort of Meat.

A *great* Fiſh bites more calmly and moderately than a *ſmall* one; for theſe latter ſnatch and run away with the Bait, without any Care or Deliberation. So an old Fiſh that hath been pricked in the Gills or Guts, is very cautious in making a ſecond Adventure.

There are many Circumſtances that conduce much to the feeding of *Pikes*, *Perch*, *Chub*, *Carp*, *Roach*, *Dace*, and *Bream*; as particularly, Conveniency of Harbour; for they that lie among Weeds and foggy Places, prove the fatteſt, though not always the ſweeteſt: They are there ſecure from the Aſſaults and Diſturbance of Enemies, and enjoy a more ſafe and contented Repoſe: Reſt and Quietneſs being as natural and helpful to their feeding as to other Creatures. Alſo, ſome Waters may be more nouriſhing than others; for a thick Sort of Water, if it be not foul and muddy, is of a better Conſiſtency, and the Parts better diſpoſed and qualified for Nutrition, than thoſe of a more thin and rarified Subſtance. No Element that is pure, and without Mixture, is well adapted for nouriſhing: Neither can Fiſh live by pure Water, Reſpiration, or ſucking in thoſe ſlender Particles of his beloved Element only, without the Concurrence and Aſſiſtance of ſome groſſer and terrene Qualities, which are intermingled with thoſe liquid Bodies.

Having mentioned, in my *Introduction*, the great Ravages which Fiſh are expoſed to, as well from their own Kind, as from Birds, four-

footed Animals, and eſpecially Man; I ſhall ſubjoin to this Chapter a *poetical Enumeration* of their irrational Enemies, which I have ſince met with in reading Mr. *Browne's Piſcatory Eclogues.*

A Thouſand Foes *the* finny People *chace*;
Nor are they ſafe from their own kindred Race:
The Pike, *fell Tyrant of the liquid Plain,*
With rav'nous Waſte devours his Fellow Train:
Yet, howſoe'er with raging Famine pin'd,
The Tench *he ſpares, a ſalutary Kind.*
Hence too the Perch, *a like voracious Brood,*
Forbears to make this gen'rous Race his Food:
Tho' on the common Drove no Bound he finds,
But ſpreads unmeaſur'd Waſte o'er all the Kinds.
Nor leſs the greedy Trout *and glutleſs* Eel
Inceſſant Woes, and dire Deſtruction deal.
The lurking Water-Rat *in Caverns preys,*
And in the Weeds the wilely Otter *ſlays:*
The ghaſtly Newt *in muddy Streams annoys,*
And in ſwift Floods the felly Snake *deſtroys:*
Toads *for the ſwarming Fry forſake the Lawn,*
And croaking Frogs *devour the tender Spawn.*
Neither the Habitants of Land nor Air,
(So ſure their Doom) the fiſhy Numbers *ſpare!*
The Swan, *fair Regent of the Silver Tide,*
Their Ranks deſtroys, and ſpreads their Ruin wide:
The Duck *her Offspring to the River leads,*
And on the deſtin'd Fry inſatiate feeds:
On fatal Wings the pouncing Bittern *ſoars,*
And wafts her Prey *from the defenceleſs Shores:*

The

The watchful Halcyons *to the Reeds repair,*
And from their Haunts the ſcaley Captives bear:
Sharp Herns *and* Corm'rants *too their Tribes oppreſs,*
A harraſs'd Race, peculiar in Diſtreſs:
Nor can the Muſe enumerate their Foes,
Such is their Fate, ſo various are their Woes.

CHAP. II.

Of the Seaſons proper for Angling.

I Shall divide my Obſervations on this Article into *general* and *particular*, beginning with the *firſt*.

The *Time of the Year* proper for *Angling* in general, is thus elegantly deſcribed by the ingenious Mr. *Henry Needler*.

The Months *o'er which the nearer Sun diſplays*
His warmer Influence, and directer Rays,
Are moſt propitious to the Angler's *Toil,*
And crown his Labours with the largeſt Spoil.
When Birds *begin in briſker Notes to ſing,*
And hail with chearful Voice returning Spring;
When Weſtern Winds *in rapid Breezes fly,*
And bruſh with downy Wings the brighten'd Sky;
When teeming Buds *their verd'rous Iſſue yield,*
And with their tender Offſpring grace the Field;
Then let the Angler, *with induſtrious Care,*
His guileful Arms *and* Implements *prepare,*
Break Winter's *Truce, and wage the* wat'ry War.

But

But when Autumnal Blaſts *have ſtripp'd the Wood,*
And o'er the Ground its yellow Honours *ſtrew'd* ;
When ſtormy Boreas *re-aſſumes his Reign,*
And with malignant Breath deforms the Plain ;
Let him a while his ſnary Wiles *forbear* ;
Till, by the Courſe of the revolving Year,
The fairer Order *of the Months returns,*
And Nature *with* freſh Bloom *her Face adorns :*
Then ſoon as Morn *has chas'd the Shades of Sight,*
And ſtreak'd the purple Eaſt with roſy Light ;
Soon as the Lark *diſplays her early Wings,*
And to the fragrant Air her Matin ſings ;
The Angler, *chearful with the Hopes of Prey,*
Takes to the reeking Brook *his dewy Way.*

In a Word, from the Beginning of *May* till the latter End of *September*, (allowing for the Diverſity of Seaſons) is the Prime of all the Year for the Diverſion we are treating of. And as to the Time of Day, it is from four in the Morning till eight at Night, (when the Days are ſo long) the worſt Part of which is about Noon.

In the *particular* Directions, I ſhall firſt conſider which Times *are not*, and then which *are*, the moſt propitious to the Gentleman Angler.

In great Droughts, when the Rivers are ſmall ; or in the Heat of a clear Day, in *May*, *June*, *July*, *Auguſt*, and the Beginning of *September*, though there be no Drought, you will

will find ſmall Sport, eſpecially in marly, chalky, ſlimy, or very ſhallow and clear Waters and Rivers.

In cold, froſty, or ſnowy Weather, it is to little Purpoſe to angle. When there happeneth in the Spring any ſmall hoary Froſt, all that Day after the Fiſh will not riſe kindly, except in the Evening, and that too muſt prove pleaſant.

If the Wind either be Eaſterly, or ſo high that you cannot guide your Tools, it is to little purpoſe to angle. Indeed all ſharp, bitter, nipping Winds, but the Eaſt eſpecially, blaſt the Recreation.

After any Sort of Fiſh have ſpawned, they never bite to any Purpoſe, until they have recovered their Strength and former Appetite.

When any Clouds ariſe, that portend a Shower or Storm, though in the midſt of Summer, they will not bite; and even if they bite well before, yet at the Approach of it, they will ceaſe.

When the Nights prove dark, cloudy, or windy, and the Moon ſhines little, or not at all, next Day there will be little or no Sport, except at ſmall ones: For *Trouts* and great Fiſh then range about to devour others.

In ſmall, clear, and ſhallow Brooks, where the Mills ſtand and keep up the Water, you will neither catch Fiſh at Ground or Fly: For Fiſh, eſpecially *Trouts*, dare not then come out of their Hold, by reaſon of the Shallow-

neſs

neſs of the Water, and that the Water then brings no Aliment with it.

When People waſh their Sheep in Summer, at the Beginning only Fiſh bite well; becauſe the Filth draws them together as to a baiting Place: But after they have glutted themſelves four or five Days, they will not bite again till waſhing Time be over.

The following Catalogue of Impediments to the Angler's Recreation, have been given us by a certain Author. 1. The Fault may be occaſioned by his Tackle, as when his Lines or Hooks are too large. 2. When his Bait is dead, or decaying. 3. If he angles at a wrong Time of the Day, when the Fiſh are not in the Humour of taking his Bait. 4. If the Fiſh have been frightened by the Sight of him, or with his Shadow. 5. If the Waters are thick, red, or white, being diſturbed with ſudden Floods. 6. If the Weather be too cold. 7. If the Weather be too hot. 8. If it rains much and faſt. 9. If it hails or ſnows. 10. If it be tempeſtuous. 11. If the Wind blows high. 12. If the Wind be in the Eaſt.

But as the principal Rules on this Head are better expreſſed in the following Verſes, than I can poſſibly expreſs them in Proſe, I ſhall leave them to the Reader's Conſideration without enlarging.

When rising Floods *o'ertop the mounding Shores,*
And bear to distant Plains their scaly Stores;
While oft', from steepy Hills, the Moisture drains,
By sweeping Torrents wash'd, and trick'ling Rains;
O'er the clear Streams a dark'ning Cloud it spreads,
And drives the Earth-worms *from their slimy Beds:*
In swarming Shoals resort the finny Brood,
And glut, insatiate, on the fatt'ning Food:
Then vainly waves the Angler's *lengthen'd* Cane,
And costly Baits *allure the Fry in vain.*
When parching Droughts *the slack'ning Streams restrain,*
The Fish *with sick'ning Looks their Food refrain,*
And seek the Coolness of the Deep in vain.
Nor wants the Angler *pre-advis'd to know,*
When certain Signs *disfav'riug Hours fore-show;*
Oft-times he views, awarn'd by adverse Skies,
His Fly *or* gliding Cork *with hopeless Eyes,*
When the dry East-wind *parches up the Plain,*
Or the wet South *pours down the drenching Rain.*
When rotting Weeds *the thick'ning Floods distain,*
And to the Deeps *retire the* finny Train;

Seek,

Seek, Anglers, *then*, *no more th' uncertain Prize*;
Enſuing Rains *expect*, *and* wintry Skies.

The *beſt Hours*, in general Eſteem, to angle in a clear Day and Water, from about the 10th of *April* until the End of *Auguſt*, is from Sun-riſe till half an Hour after ten a Clock, and from half an Hour after two a Clock until Sun-ſet. But if the Day be dark, cloudy, gloomy or lowering, eſpecially if at ſuch a Time alſo a gentle Breeze blow from any Quarter but the Eaſt, you will not fail of catching Fiſh in any Hour of the Day. But in *March*, the Beginning of *April*, *September*, and all the Winter Months, you may angle all the Day, from about one Hour after Sun-riſe until about half an Hour before Sun-ſet, either in a muddy or clear Water. And you may even angle all the Day in a muddy Water, from the Middle of *April* until the End of *Auguſt*, tho' early in the Morning and late in the Evening are beſt.

When *Trouts* leap out of the Water, and *Pikes* ſhoot in purſuit of other Fiſhes, they will bite well, if you angle with Tackle and Baits proper for the Seaſon and Fiſh.

When a ſudden, violent Shower hath a little mudded the Water, if you go forth immediately after ſuch a Shower, and angle at Ground in the Stream or Sides thereof, with *Brandling*, *Gilt-tail*, *Tag-tail*, or chiefly *Red-*

worm well ſcoured, if there be Store of Fiſh, you will have Sport to your own Satisfaction.

When Floods have carried away all the Filth that the Rain had waſhed from the higher Grounds into the River, ſo that the River keepeth his uſual Sounds, and is of a wheyiſh, cheſnut, brown, or ale Colour, it is then good to angle at Ground.

A little before any Fiſh ſpawn, they come into the gravelly, ſandy Fords, to rub and looſen their Bellies, and then and there they bite well.

When Rives are raiſed by Rain, and yet within their Banks, Fiſh ſeek ſhelter in the milder Currenst of ſmall Brooks that fall into larger Rivers, and at the Sides or Ends of Bridges, that defend a ſmall Space of Ground from the Impetuouſneſs of the Stream, or in any low Place near the River-ſide: In ſuch Places you will find Sport.

At the Conflux of Rivers, and where it ebbs and flows, Fiſh ſometimes bite very well, but in the Ebb moſt uſually.

In *February*, *March*, the Beginning of *April*, *September*, and all the Winter Months, Fiſh bite beſt in the Sun-ſhiny, warm, and middle Part of the Day, no Wind ſtirring, and the Air clear: But in the Summer Months, from the 10th of *April* unto the End of *Auguſt*, early in the Morning, and in the Evening until Sun-ſet, and in dark, gloomy Weather.

Fiſh riſe beſt at the Fly after a Shower that has not mudded the Water, yet has beaten the Gnats

Gnats and Flies into the River. You may, in such a Shower, observe them to rise much, if you can but endure the Rain.

In calm, clear, and Star-light Nights, especially if the Moon shines, great Fish, *Trouts* especially, are as wary and fearful as in dark, gloomy, and windy Days. But if the next Day prove dark, cloudy, gloomy and windy, and the Water in Order, you may be sure of Sport, if there be Plenty of Fish in the River.

In small, clear Brooks, if you come immediately after a Shower hath raised the Water, or take it just as any Mill Water begins to come down, and so go along with the Course of the Water, Fish, especially *Trouts*, will bite well.

Morning and Evening are best for *Ground-line*, for a *Trout* or other Fish, in clear Weather and Water: But in dark, cloudy Weather, or muddy Water, you may angle at Ground all Day.

Great Fish, as *Trouts* in particular, feed most in the Night, especially if it be dark or windy; and then bite not the next Day, unless it prove dark or windy, and then a little in the Afternoon only.

The Wind blowing from the South or West, is good to angle in; the North Wind is but indifferent, and the East Wind very bad.

All Fish bite keener and better, especially in Summer, in swift, rapid, stony, and gravelly

Rivers, than in thoſe that run gently, and glide in Slime and Mud.

Some may expect me to inſert the Times moſt propitious to Anglers, according to the Rules of judicial Aſtrologers; but as moſt People are ſufficiently convinced of the Vanity thereof, it would rather be an Unkindneſs than a Favour, to puzzle our Angler with their ridiculous Notions, as unſerviceable to him as falſe in their Foundations. And as to Prognoſtics of the Weather, I will only give him the Words of the Poet.

To flatt'ring Skies *no certain Credit lend,*
Nor on precarious Signs *too much depend.*
The Sportſman *oft' a ruddy Morning ſees,*
The Air unclouded, and without a Breeze,
When ſudden Winds *with height'ning Guſts ariſe,*
And pitchy Clouds *enwrap the dark'ning Skies;*
The drizzling Rains *deſcend in ceaſeleſs Show'rs,*
And ſullen Auſter *ſhakes the dripping Bow'rs;*
The Anglers *homeward o'er the Meads repaſs,*
And journey cheerleſs thro' the plaſhy Graſs.
And oft' when Clouds *a threat'ning Storm delay,*
The gloomy Morning *brings a radiant* Day.

But, to conclude the Whole in the Words of the ſame ingenious Author,

Hap-

Happy the Fiſher, *when in ſportive Hours*
No Droughts *prevent him, nor* intemp'rate Show'rs;
When mildeſt Zephyrs *thro' the* Æther *fly,*
Or South-Winds *ſpread their Fleeces o'er the Sky;*
While varied Sun-ſhine, *and* alternate Rains,
Temper the Streams, and verdure all the Plains:
The Fiſh *riſe eager at the* floating Bait,
Or ſink the Cork *with their entangled Weight.*
*But warn th'*unpractis'd Angler *not to ply*
In Shallows then, amid the ſwarming *Fry;*
Leſt haply they on the hid Ruin *feed,*
And of their Tribes prevent the future Breed.

CHAP. III.

Of the principal Rivers in England, *and particularly of the* Thames.

THE Rivers in *England* are ſaid by Dr. *Heylin* to be 325, though others increaſe their Number to 450. It would be ſuperfluous here to treat particularly of their Diverſities, their Situations, their Diſtance and Remoteneſs from each other, their Nearneſs or Vicinity to the Sea, the Qualities of their Water, and the various Species of Fiſhes they contain. Thoſe that have a more immediate Intercourſe with the Ocean, participate of its Influences, and have the ſame Viciſſitudes, the ſame Fluxes and Refluxes, the ſame ſalt Water, and the ſame Sort of Fiſh which frequent the Seas where they diſembogue themſelves.

The Mouths of Rivers are too deep to be fathomed by the Cordage of a Line; but more inland, and farther distant from the common Receptacle of Waters, the Rivers are most proper for the Angler's Diversion.

The principal Rivers in *England* are the *Thames*, *Severn*, *Trent*, *Tine*, *Tweed*, *Medway*, *Tees*, *Dove*, *Isis*, *Tame*, *Willey*, *Avon*, *Lea*, *Irwel*, *Lon*, *Nen*, *Welland*, *Derwent*, *Calder*, *Wharf*, *Nid*, *Don*, *Swale*, *Hull*, *Ouse*, and *Are*. The Rivers in *Wales* are reckoned above 200, the principal of which are the *Dee*, *Wye*, *Conwy*, *Tivy*, *Chedlaydy*, *Cluid*, *Usk*, *Tovy*, *Taff*, and *Dovy*.

But as the Maps will give a better Prospect of these than any Enumeration of them can do, let every Angler have a large one of *England*, or at least of the particular County where he usually angles, and therein he may with Delight observe the Spring-head, Site, Distance, various Passages, Windings, Turnings, and Confluxes of each particular River, with what Towns, Castles, Churches, Gentlemen's Houses, and Places of Note are on or near their Banks; making, as he angles, Remarks proper to the Nature of each. I will only say a Word or two of the six principal.

1. The *Thames*, compounded of two Rivers, *Tame* and *Isis*, though the latter of these is called *Thames* before its Conjunction with the former. The *Tame* rises in *Bucks*, somewhat beyond *Tame* in *Oxfordshire*, and the latter in *Cotswold-hills*, near *Cirencester* in *Gloucestershire*. They

They meet together about *Dorcheſter* in *Oxfordſhire*, and thence run united betwixt that County and *Berks*, and between *Buckinghamſhire*, *Middleſex*, and *Eſſex* on the one Side, and *Surry* and *Kent* on the other, wedding itſelf to the *Kentiſh Medway* in the very Jaws of the Ocean. This River is ſaid to feel the Violence and Benefit of the Sea more than any other River in *Europe*, ebbing and flowing twice a Day, more than ſixty Miles. About its Banks are ſo many fine Towns and principal Palaces, that a foreign Poet thus writes of it.

We ſaw ſo many Woods *and princely* Bowers,
Sweet Fields, *gay* Palaces, *and ſtately* Towers,
So many Gardens *dreſt with curious Care,*
That Thames *with* royal Tyber *may compare.*

2. The ſecond River of Note is the *Severn*, which hath its Beginning in *Plinlimmon-Hill* in *Montgomeryſhire*, and its End ſeven Miles from *Briſtol*; waſhing in that Space the Walls of *Shrewsbury*, *Worceſter*, *Glouceſter*, and divers other Places and Palaces of Note. It receives more great Rivers, and is farther navigable than the *Thames*, but does not equal it for Quantity and Variety of Fiſh.

3. The *Trent* (ſo called, ſay ſome, for thirty Kind of Fiſhes that are found in it, or for that it receives thirty leſſer Rivers) having its Fountain in *Staffordſhire*, and gliding through the Counties of *Nottingham*, *Lincoln*, *Leiceſter*, and *York*, augments the turbulent Current of the *Humber*, the moſt violent Stream of all the

Isle. This *Humber* indeed is not a distinct River, having a Spring-head of its own, but rather the Mouth or *Æstuarium* of divers Rivers here meeting together; among which, besides the *Trent*, are the *Darwent*, and *Ouse*.

4. The *Medway*, a *Kentish* River, falling into the Sea together with the *Thames*, and famous for harbouring the Royal Navy.

5. The *Tweed*, the North-East Bound of *England*, on whose Banks is seated the strong and almost impregnable Town of *Berwick*.

6. The *Tine*, famous for *Newcastle*, and her inexhaustible Coal-pits. These, and the rest of principal Note, are thus comprehended in one of Mr. *Drayton*'s Sonnets.

The Floods Queen, Thames, *for Ships and Swans is crown'd*,
And stately Severn *for her Shore is prais'd*;
The Chrystal Trent *for Fords and Fish renown'd*,
And Avon's *Fame to* Albion's *Cliffs is rais'd*:
Carlegion Chester *vaunts her holy* Dee;
York *many Wonders of her* Ouse *can tell*:
The Peak *her* Dove, *whose Banks so fertile be*,
And Kent *will say her* Medway *doth excel*.
Cotswold *commends her* Isis *to the* Tame;
Our Northern Borders boast of Tweed's *fair Flood*;
Our Western Parts extol their Willy's *Fame*,
And the old Lea *brags of the* Danish *Blood*.

But I return again to the *Thames*, of which, and the Rivers that fall into it, I shall treat some-

ſomewhat more particularly, as they are more the Seat of this Diverſion of Angling than any others. And here I muſt own myſelf obliged to the experienced Author of a Treatiſe concerning *Thames*-Fiſhing.

The higher any Man goes up the *Thames*, if within about forty Miles, the more Sport, and the greater Variety of Fiſh he will meet with: But as few *Londoners* go ſo far from Home, I ſhall firſt mention the beſt Places for *Thames* Angling from *London-Bridge* to *Chelſea*.

It will be to no Manner of Purpoſe to angle in the *Thames*, if the Air be cold and raw, the Wind high, the Water rough, or if it be wet Weather: But when the Sky is ſerene, the Air temperate, and the Water ſmooth, you need not doubt of meeting with good Sport. The proper Hours for Angling, are from the Time that the Tide is half ebb'd, to within two Hours of High-water, provided that the Land-floods do not come down. Always pitch your Boat under the Wind; that is, if the Wind be at South, then keep on the *Surry* Shore; if at North, then on the *London* Side.

The beſt Places for pitching a Boat to angle in the *Thames*, are about one hundred and fifty Yards from *York-Stairs*, the *Savoy*, *Somerſet-Garden-Wall*, *Dorſet-Stairs*, *Black-Friars-Stairs*, the *Dung-Wharf* near *Water-Lane*, *Trig-Stairs* and *Eſſex-Stairs*. On *Surry* Side, the *Falcon-Stairs*; *Barge-Houſes*; *Cuper's*, vulgarly called *Cupid's-Stairs*; the *Wind-Mill*, and *Lambeth*. When you go to angle at

Chelſea

Chelſea, on a calm fair Day, the Wind being in a right Corner, pitch your Boat almoſt oppoſite to the Church, and angle in ſix or ſeven Foot Water, where you will meet with Plenty of *Roach*.

Mortlack-Deeps is the next Place where *Roach* principally reſort when the Weeds are rotten; and here are good *Carp* very often. And from the Sides of the *Eights*, oppoſite to *Brentford*, *Iſleworth*, and *Twickenham*, there is very good Angling for *Roach*, *Dace*, *Gudgeon*, and *Perch*. Very often you will meet with *Trout*, and ſometimes with *Carp*. *Teddington-Banks* are remarkable for Plenty of good *Gudgeon*; *Kingſton-wick* and *Kingſton* for *Barbel*, *Roach*, and *Dace*. At *Sunbury*, there is good Angling for *Roach*, *Dace*, and *Gudgeons*; and from the *Eights*, for *Trout* and large *Perch*. *Shepperton-Pool* abounds with large *Barbel* and *Dace*. At and about *Windſor* is vaſt Variety of all Sorts of Fiſh; but if a Man be found angling in another's Water, he is fined very high by the Court of that Town, even though he catches but a ſingle *Gudgeon*, *Roach*, or *Dace*.

Of the Rivers that empty themſelves into the *Thames*, and of others which are not far from it, I begin with thoſe on the North-Side. 1. *Ilford-River*, the upper Part of which abounds with *Roach* and *Dace*, and ſome *Perch*; but between *Ilford* and the *Thames*, eſpecially about three Miles from the Town, there is *Pike*. 2. *Woodford-River*, having Plenty of *Perch*,

Perch, *Chub*, *Roach*, and *Dace*. 3. *Stratford River*, which gives the Angler good Diverſion for *Roach*, *Dace*, *Chub*, *Perch*, and *Eels*. 4. *Bow-River*, much of the Nature with *Stratford-River*, and ſtored with the ſame Sort of Fiſh. 5. *Hackney-River*, having Plenty of large *Barbel* and *Chub*, *Roach*, *Dace*, *Gudgeon*, *Eels*, and *Lampreys*. Its Fiſh are as good as any other River can yield, if not better; particularly the *Barbels*, *Eels*, and *Gudgeons*. 6. *Waltham River*, beſides large *Barbel* and *Chub*, *Roach*, *Dace*, *Gudgeon*, and *Eels*, has good Store of fine *Pike*, and ſome *Carp*. 7. The *New-River*, well ſtored with *Roach*, *Dace*, *Chub*, ſmall *Gudgeons*, and *Eels*. 8. *Brentford-River*, a good River formerly, but much abuſed by Poachers. Here are ſome *Roach*, *Dace*, and *Chub*. 9. *Hounſlow-River*, which lies ſo very open, that the Fiſh, which are *Roach*, *Dace*, *Perch*, *Pike*, and *Gudgeon*, are aware of the Angler, and ſhoot away before he can lay in his Line. 10. *Cole-River*, abounding with *Chub*, *Roach*, and *Dace*, above the Town of *Colnbrook*: And between that Town and the *Thames* are Plenty of large *Perch*; but they are very quick-ſighted, and ſhy. 11. *Uxbridge-River*, excellent for its large and fat *Trouts*; but the Water being leaſed out to many who have a Property in it, it is a difficult Matter to angle there, and not be diſcovered. If you go into any one of the Proprietor's Grounds to angle, even by Conſent, you are generally attended by one who keeps

keeps an Account how many Brace of *Trouts* you take, for which you muſt pay certain large Prices.

On the South Side of the *Thames*, are, 1. *Deptford-River*, very much decayed, and having but few Fiſh in it, ſuch as *Roach*, *Dace*, and *Flounders*; and by Chance, you may meet with a *Trout*. 2. *Lewiſham-River*, in which are ſome good *Trouts*, large *Roach*, and *Chub*, *Gudgeons*, and ſome *Perch*, and ſmall *Dace*. 3. *Wandſworth-River*, having many large *Gudgeons* and *Dace*, *Flounders*, *Perch*, *Pike*, ſome *Carp*, and *Trouts*; and very large *Silver Eels* are often taken here. 4. *Martin-River*, whoſe principal Fiſh are *Trouts*. 5. *Mitcham-River*, for *Trouts* alſo. 6. *Carſhalton-River*, abounding with *Trouts*, and other white Fiſh. 7. *Moulſey-River*, yielding *Perch*, *Jack*, *Roach*, *Dace*, *Chub*, *Gudgeon*, ſome *Flounders*, and a few *Trouts*, beſides *Barbel*. 8. *Eſher-River*, good for *Jacks*, *Perch*, *Chub*, *Roach*, *Dace*, *Gudgeon*, *Eels*, *Flounders*, *Barbels*, and *Trouts*. 9. *Cobham-River*, having Plenty of good *Trouts*, fat and large; as alſo *Dace*, *Perch*, *Chubs*, *Jacks*, and *Gudgeons*. 10. *Weybridge-River*, yielding good Diverſion for *Carp*, ſome of which weigh eight or nine Pounds; *Jack*, *Roach*, *Dace*, *Flounders*, *Popes*, large *Bleak*, *Barbel*, and *Gudgeon*. 11. *Byfleet River*, where you have very large *Pikes* and *Jacks*, *Tench*, *Perch* of eighteen Inches in Length, good *Carp*, large *Flounders*, *Bream*, *Roach*, *Dace*, *Gudgeon* in Plenty, *Popes*, large

large *Chub*, and *Eels*. 12. The *New-River*, in which are vaſt Quantities of excellent *Gudgeon*, and a few *Jacks*, or young *Pike*, *Dace*, and ſome *Roach*.

I cannot better conclude this Account of the *Thames*, and the principal Rivers that fall into and compoſe it, than by the following beautiful Lines of Mr. *Pope*, in which the largeſt of thoſe Rivers are enumerated by their proper Appellations.

Firſt the fam'd Authors of his antient Name,
The winding Iſis *and the fruitful* Tame:
The Kennet *ſwift, for ſilver* Eels *renown'd*;
The Loddon *ſlow, with verdant Alders crown'd*:
Cole, *whoſe clear Streams his flow'ry Iſlands lave,*
And chalky Wey, *that rolls a milky Wave*:
The blue, tranſparent Vandalis *appears*;
The gulphy Lee *his ſedgy Treſſes rears*;
And ſullen Mole, *that hides his diving Flood*;
And ſilent Darent, *ſtain'd with* Daniſh *Blood.*

CHAP. IV.

Of the various Methods of Angling.

THO' all Sorts of Fiſh will ſometimes take Baits at the Ground, yet all will not take the Fly at the Top of the Water. But the *Running-line*, or *Angling by Hand*, without any Float, and only one or two ſmall Plummets of Lead, is the moſt proper Way to angle for a *Trout* with Worms, either in a muddy or clear Water at Ground.

In

In a muddy Water, or one diſcoloured by Rain, the *Running-line* ſhould be half the Length of the Rod, more or leſs, and the two lowermoſt Links of three Hairs a-piece. Next ſhould be a Link of four Hairs, with a Loop or Water-nooſe, to faſten it to another of the ſame Number, having likewiſe a Water-nooſe at its Bottom. Then proceed with Links of five or ſix Hairs a-piece, to the End. The three lowermoſt Links, or Gildards, ſhould be of a ſorrel, brown, or cheſnut Colour. Your Cane or Reed-rod muſt have a Top neither too ſtiff, nor too ſlender: The Rod to be about three Yards and a half long, and the Top about one Yard and a half, or two Yards of Hazle, either in one or two Pieces, and five or ſix Inches of Whale-bone, made round, ſmooth and taper. All this will make the Rod five Yards and a half long, or five Yards at leaſt.

The Line ſhould have more Lead in a great, troubleſome, rough River, than in one that is ſmaller and more quiet: As near as may be, always juſt ſo much as will ſink the Bait to the Bottom, and permit its Motion, without any violent Jogging on the Ground. Carry the Top of your Rod even with your Hand, beginning at the Head of the Stream, and letting the Bait run downwards as far as the Rod and Line will permit, the Lead dragging and rolling on the Ground. No more of the Line muſt be in the Water, than will permit the Lead to touch the Bottom; for you are to keep

keep the Line as ſtrait as poſſible, yet ſo as not to raiſe the Lead from the Bottom. When you have a Bite, you may perceive it by your Hand and the Point of your Rod and Line: Then ſtrike gently, and ſtrait upwards; firſt allowing the Fiſh, by a little ſlackening the Line, a ſmall Time to take in the Bait. In a clear Water indeed, it has been found beſt to ſtrike at the firſt Biting of the Fiſh, when you angle for *Trouts*, *Graylings*, or *Salmon-ſmelts*.

Your Bait may be a *Red-worm* well ſcoured; but a *Brandling*, *Meadow-worm*, or *Tag-tail* is ſtill better; or, which is beſt of all, both a *Brandling* and a *Gilt-tail*, or two *Worms* of the ſame Sort, at the ſame Time, in the Manner as is hereafter directed. Obſerve often to renew your Bait: But tho' when you angle for *Trouts*, with any *Worms* except the *Dew-worm*, they take the Bait dragging on the Ground, either in a muddy or clear Water; yet a *Grayling* loves it nine or twelve Inches from the Bottom.

If you angle for a *Trout* with a well-ſcoured *Dew-worm*, in a muddy Water, put the Hook in him towards the Tail, ſomewhat above the Middle, and out again a little below towards the Head: Then draw him over the arming of the Hook, which ought to be large, and put the Point again into his Head, till it come near the Place where the Point of the Hook firſt came out: Then draw back that which

which was above the Arming of the Hook, and ſo proceed with your Sport.

But if you angle in a muddy Water for *Trouts* of the uſual Size, from eight to twelve Inches long, then is the Time to have two *Brandlings*, or two *Meadow-worms*, or a *Brandling* and *Gilt-tail* on the Hook at once, which you are to bait thus: Run the Point of the Hook in at the very Head of the firſt, which when you have two Sorts ſhould be the *Brandling*, and ſo down through his Body, till it be paſt the Knot, or about the Middle of the Worm: Then puſh it out, and thruſt the Worm above the Whipping or Arming, that you may not bruiſe it with your Fingers, till you have put on the other, by running the Point of the Hook in below the Knot or Middle, and upwards through his Body, till it be juſt covered with the Head: This being done, ſlip the firſt *Worm* down over the Whipping again, till the Knots or Middles of both meet together. Any two *Worms* may be thus baited.

But if you angle with one *Worm* only, which is the moſt proper Way for a *Trout*, *Salmon-ſmelt*, or *Grayling*, in a clear Water at Running-line, put the Point of the Hook in at the very Tag of his Tail, and run it up his Body quite over all the Whipping, and almoſt an Inch upon the Line. Many Anglers let the Head hang downwards, and leave the Point of the Hook bare; but others cover the Point with the *Worm's* Head, nipping off juſt the Tip-

Tip-end of it. When you angle with the *Worm's* Head hanging down, and the Point of the Hook bare, ſtrike immediately upon the firſt Bite of a *Trout*, or *Salmon-ſmelt.*

When you bait thus with only one *Brandling*, *Gilt-tail*, or *Meadow-worm* on the Hook at a Time, your Hook ſhould be ſmall, and your Line have two or three of the lowermoſt Links of one Hair a-piece, and then one or two Links of two Hairs a-piece, and ſo proceed with three and four to the topmoſt Link. The Hair ſhould be of a duskiſh white or grey Colour; the Line generally about two Yards ſhorter than the Rod, and leaded with a ſmall blackiſh Plummet or Shot. Thus tackled and baited, always prefer a clear before a muddy Water, and angle up the Stream, ſtill caſting out the Worm before you, with a light one-handed Rod, made of Hazle, Yew, and Whalebone, and at leaſt five Yards and a half long. Sometimes the Bait will be taken at the Top, or within a very little of the Superficies of the Water, and commonly before the light Plumb can ſink it to the Bottom, which will not be immediately by reaſon of the Stream, and that you muſt always keep your Hand and Worm in Motion, tho' very ſlowly, by drawing the Bait ſtill back towards you, as if you were angling with a Fly. The Rod muſt be light, pliant, long, and not top-heavy, true and finely made; and this is the beſt Way of angling

ling for *Trout*, *Grayling*, and *Salmon-ſmelts* with Worms, in a clear Water eſpecially. If your Conſtitution would endure to let you wade to the Calf of your Leg or Knee, into the Tail of a ſhallow clear Stream, and ſo keep off the Bank, you may almoſt take what *Trouts*, *Graylings*, or *Salmon-ſmelts* you can deſire, in a Place where they abound. However, ſome had rather uſe this fine Tackle when they angle for *Graylings* only, with *Worms*, *Cod-bait*, *Aſh-grub*, or *Dock-worm*, and a Float of Cork; becauſe they take their Baits beſt 6, 9, or 12 Inches from the Bottom.

The Manner of Angling in very clear Rivers, by reaſon of their exceeding Brightneſs, is very different from that commonly uſed in others not ſo tranſparent; theſe latter admitting of ſtronger Tackle, and a nearer Approach to the Stream; nor are they ſo difficult for Novices as the more rarified Rivers, which require an able and judicious Artiſt, and very fine Tackle. However, upon the whole, Angling with a Worm and a ſingle Hair, for two Links next the Hooks, in a clear Water, for *Trouts*, *Graylings*, and *Salmon-ſmelts*, on frequent Experience has been found ſo advantageous, that it is generally ſubſtituted inſtead of the *artificial Fly*, eſpecially from the Riſing of the Sun till eight o'Clock.

The Line for *Float-Angling* in a River ſhould be longer than the Rod two or three Foot, but ſhorter than the Rod in Pits, Ponds, and

and Meres. For *Trouts*, *Graylings*, or *Salmon-ſmelts*, in a clear Water, but one Hair next the Hook, and ſuch a Rod and Line as directed for a *Trout* with the Running-Line in a clear Water, is always beſt: But for moſt other Fiſh, and in a muddy Water, with three Hairs next the Hook, and proportionably ſtrong upwards; with large Pellet-Shot, or ſmall Bullets, for the Plumb.

In general, the Bait muſt be ſuited to the Fiſh you angle for; your Plumbs fitted to the Cork or Float; your Cork to the Condition of the River you angle in, that is, to the Swiftneſs or Slowneſs of it: According to the Directions given in the ſeveral Articles of particular Fiſh, Plumbs, and Floats. You muſt caſt the Bait up the River, and let it run downwards as far as the Rod and Line will ſuffer. In a clear Water, when you uſe *Worms*, bait with but one *Worm* only. In a muddy or diſcoloured Water, bait with two *Worms* at a Time.

And as in clear Water, the Colour of your Line muſt be a duſkiſh white or grey Colour; ſo in Water that is diſcoloured, your Line for two Yards next the Hook ought to be of a ſorrel, brown, or Cheſnut, and the upper Part of it white.

This Way you may angle for moſt ſorts of Fiſh, letting the Bait drag on the Ground for the *Trout*, *Gudgeon*, *Bream*, *Barbel*, *Flounder*, and *Salmon*; for *Grayling* and *Perch* keeping it ſix or nine Inches from the Bottom; and for *Pike*,

Pike, *Ruff*, *Carp*, *Tench*, *Roach*, and *Bleak*, about Mid Water, ſometimes lower and ſometimes higher. The *Chub* is often taken with the Bait on the Bottom, ſometimes at Mid Water in hot Weather, and ſometimes at the Top. The *Dace* takes all Ground-Baits at Bottom; and ſome let the Bait touch the Ground when they angle for *Perch*, *Tench*, and *Roach* in Rivers, tho' this Way is more generally diſapproved. In Ponds, for *Roach* and *Tench*, angle always about two Foot within Water. Thoſe who angle for a *Trout* with a Float, keep the Bait as near the Bottom as they can, without dragging; which is difficult, if not impoſſible, to be always obſerved, by Reaſon of the Declivity of the Bottom, and Unevenneſs thereof in moſt Places: And the daily Experiment of the Running-line, ſhews that to be a very effectual Way for a *Trout*. The *Eel* is never to be angled for with a Float, but always with a Ledger-bait, Snigling, Brogling, or Bobbing.

You may uſe all Sorts of Baits when you angle with a Float, but Ground-baits and Paſtes are moſt common, and ſometimes Flies for *Roach* within the Water, particularly the *Ant-Fly*. Let your Lead neither be ſo heavy as to ſink the Cork or Float, nor ſo light as not with the ſmalleſt Touch to make it dip under Water; the infallible Signal of a Bite, unleſs the Bait ſtick, or the Line be entangled on Wood, Stones, or Weeds.

To

To *angle at Top with a Worm*, you muſt uſe a Line longer than the Rod, and a *Brandling* or *Gilt-tail Worm*. Your Line ſhould be without Float or Lead. You muſt draw your Bait up and down the Stream, at Top of the Water, as you do a *Cod-bait* for *Trout*. In a clear Water and Day, perhaps you may take more *Trouts* and *Salmon-ſmelts* this Way than any other.

In order *to lay Night Hooks*, procure a ſmall Cord ſixteen Yards long, and at equal Diſtances tie to it five or ſix Hempen Lines, of the Thickneſs of the Trowling-line, about eighteen Inches long a-piece, faſtening them in ſuch a Manner as you may eaſily remove or put them to again. To each of theſe whip a Hook, and bait it with a *Minnow*, *Loach*, or *Bull-head*, his Gill-Fins cut off; or, for want of them, with a ſmall *Gudgeon*, a ſmall *Roach*, a *Seven Eyes*, or one of the ſmall Brood of *Eels*; or with *Beef*, or the Pith and Marrow in an *Ox* or *Cow*'s *Back-bone*. If you bait with any Fiſh, put the Point of the Hook in at the Tail and out at the Mouth, the Head of the Fiſh reſting on the Hook's Bent; and cover the Point of the Hook with a ſmall *Worm*: Then to one End of the Cord faſten a Stone, or a Lead Weight of about two Pounds, and throw it croſs the River in ſome ſtill Deep, or at the Tail or Side of a deep Stream. Faſten the other End to ſome Bough or Stick on the Water-bank you ſtand on; and in the Morning you will ſeldom fail to find Fiſh enſnared

ſnared. Uſe a great Fiſh Needle to draw the Line thro' the Bait, and out at its Tail, and then let it ſlip down to the Hook's Bent, the Head being downwards, tying the Tail to the Line with Thread, and the Top of the Hemp Line to the Cord.

Eels, *Chubs*, large *Trouts*, and *Pike*, are taken this Way: But if you lay for *Pike*, keep the Bait with a Float about a Foot from the Bottom. For other Fiſh let it touch the Bottom. Your great *Lobworm* is as good a Bait as any for Night-Hooks; only if you lay them in Rivers, perhaps the ſmall Fiſh may pull your Bait off, and miſs being taken. Therefore *Minnows*, *Loaches*, *Bull-heads*, ſmall *Gudgeons*, *Bleaks*, ſmall *Roaches*, ſmall *Daces*, *Seven-Eyes*, *&c.* are the moſt certain to ſucceed.

Having omitted the *Artificial Minnow* in ſpeaking of Baits, I will here add Mr. *Walton*'s Directions for making it, who ſays it will catch a *Trout* as well as an *artificial Fly*, and takes care to inform us, that he had one made by a handſome Woman, who had a fine Hand, and a live Minnow lying by her. The Mould or Body was Cloth, and wrought over with a Needle; the Back with very dark green Silk, and a paler green Silk towards the Belly, ſhadowed as perfectly as a natural Minnow. The Belly was wrought a Part of it with white Silk, and another Part with Silver Thread: The Tail and Fins were of a Quill, which was ſhaved thin: The Eyes were two little black Beads, and the Head

was

was ſo ſhadowed, and all of it ſo exactly imitated, that it would beguile any ſharp-ſighted *Trout* in a ſwift Stream. Others have an *artificial Minnow* made of Tin, which may be bought at the Tackle-Shops. They are uſed for *Perch* as well as *Trout*.

When you *angle at Ground* for ſmall Fiſh, as *Gudgeons*; or at *Mid-water* for *Roach* and *Bleak*; put two or three Hooks on your Line, the one about eight or nine Inches lower than the other: Which you may do, by having two or three Gildards, that is Links arm'd, or whipped with Hooks, and tied at the lowermoſt Water-Knot. Thus you may put on two or three different Baits, and you will try with more Eaſe and leſs Time which is beſt taken; and often catch two or three Fiſh at once. You may alſo have one Bait for ſuch as feed cloſe upon the Ground, as the *Gudgeon*. And another for ſuch as feed a little higher, as *Roach* and *Dace*. But if your Bait be to run on the Ground, you muſt have a fair ſandy Bottom, free from Wood, Stones, and Weeds: Your Lead is always to be on the lowermoſt Link. This is the *Pater-noſter* Line.

Give all Fiſh Time to take and ſwallow the Bait, eſpecially *Pike*, *Perch*, *Gudgeon*, and, in a muddy Water, *Trout*, being not over-haſty, unleſs you angle with ſuch tender Baits as will not endure nibbling at, as *Paſtes*, *Sheep's-Blood*, *Flies*, &c. which are taken away at the firſt Pull of the Fiſh, and therefore at firſt Pull oblige you to try your Fortune. The

Roach generally nibbles at the Bait, and does not bite ſurely; but if he does bite ſurely, it is commonly a very good one: Therefore ſtrike at the firſt Touch when you angle for him.

It is common, eſpecially when the Angler is tired, to *angle* with a *Ledger-bait*, that is, a Bait always fixed in one certain Place; which is ſo called in oppoſition to other Baits, that are always in Motion, and thence called *Walking-baits*. The Manner of the *Ledger-bait* is thus.

Take off your Cork from your Float Line, it being leaded as uſual; and within half a Yard of the Top of the Line, wrap about it a thin Plate of Lead, one Inch broad, and an Inch and a half long: Then fix your Line to the Rod, and bait your Hook, and caſt it into a very gentle Stream, or ſtill Water, and there let it ſink, and reſt on the Bottom. Either firmly hold the Rod, or ſtick the thick End thereof in the River's Bank, and as you ſtand or ſit by it, you will perceive, by the Motion of the Lead on your Line's Top, when you have a Bite. This Way you may angle for all Sorts of Fiſh whatſoever, eſpecially the *Chub* and *Eel*. Let *Ledger-baits* for the *Pike* be always kept, at leaſt, a Foot from the Bottom, by the Help of a Float.

Angling with the *natural Fly* is called *Dibbing*, *Dabbing*, or *Dibbling*. It is uſually performed upon the very Surface of the Water, but ſometimes by permitting

ting the Bait to ſink two or three Inches, eſpecially when you join a *Cod-bait*, or *Clap-bait*, with the *Oak-fly*, for *Trout* or *Chub*.

You may dib with any Sort of *natural Fly*; but principally for a *Trout* with a *Green-drake* and *Stone-fly*, or with the *Oak-fly* and *Cod-bait*, or with *Fern-fly*, for about ten Days in *May*: But the *Fern-fly* is good for the *Chub* all the Summer, *Cankers*, *Palmers*, *Caterpillars*, *Graſshoppers*, their Legs and outermoſt Wings taken off, *Oak-worm* and *Hawthorn-worm*, or *Grub*, are alſo good. Some often pull off the uppermoſt Wings of the *Fern-fly*, when they uſe it in *dibbing* for a *Trout*. You may likewiſe *dib* with the *Water-cricket*, or *Creeper*, in the Month of *April*.

The *Salmon*, *Trout*, *Grayling*, *Bleak*, *Chub*, *Roach*, and *Dace*, are the only Fiſh that will take Flies. The four firſt take the *natural Fly* no better than the *Dub-fly*, except in very hot calm Weather, or in the Evening of a hot Day, at which Times it is moſt proper to *dib*. The reſt take *natural Flies*, either at top, or under, or within the Water; and ſometimes a *Dub-fly*, eſpecially if a *Cod-bait*, *Oak-worm*, *Clap-bait* or *Gentle* be joined with it. The *Dace* takes Flies beſt at top of the Water, or within an Inch thereof; but the *Roach* takes them beſt a Foot within the Water, or more deep ſometimes.

Dibbing for *Trout* or *Grayling* is performed with a Line about half the Length of the Rod, if the Air be ſtill, or with one almoſt as long

as the Rod, if there be a Wind to carry it from you. There ſhould be four Hairs next the Hook for *Trouts*, but five or ſix for the *Chub*. Let the Fly play on the very Top of the Water before you, up and down the River, as the Wind ſerves; and angle as near as you can to the Bank of the ſame Side whereon you ſtand: Though when you ſee a Fiſh riſe within Reach, you may guide your Fly quick over him, whether in the Middle or on the contrary Side; and if you are pretty well out of Sight, either by kneeling, or the Interpoſition of a Bank or Buſh, you may almoſt be ſure to take him, if it be preſently done. The Fiſh will otherwiſe, perhaps, be removed to another Place, if it be in the ſtill Deeps, where he is always in Motion, and roving up and down for Prey; though in a Stream you may almoſt always, eſpecially if there be a good Stone near, find him in the ſame Place. Above an Inch of the Line ought not to touch the Water in *dibbing*; therefore you may be the ſtronger tackled. For in this Kind of Angling you are to expect the largeſt Fiſh; and wanting Length to give him Line after he is ſtruck, you muſt be forced to tug for it.

Some highly commend a *Dibbing-Line* made of white Virginal Wire, the Brittleneſs or Stiffneſs of it being firſt allayed and tempered, by laying it upon clear hot Coals, for ſome ſmall Time, which will cauſe the Metal to be more tough.

When

When you have got the *Green-drake* and *Stone-fly*, which are two of the Species of *May-flies*, take one of them, and put the Point of the Hook into the thickeſt Part of his Body, under one of his Wings; run it directly through, and out at the other Side, leaving him ſpitted croſs on the Hook: Then taking the other, put him on after the ſame Manner, but with his Head the contrary Way, in which Poſture they will live, and play with their Wings a Quarter of an Hour, if you but let them touch the Superficies of the Water. But if you dib with an *Oak-fly* and a *Cod-bait*, put the *Oak-fly* on length-ways in under his Head, and out at his Tail, and a *Cod-bait* on the Point of the Hook, and let them ſink a little into the Water. You may bait any other two Flies after the ſame Manner. If Fiſh will not bite very well, take your natural *Stone-fly* at Dibbing, pull away his Wings, and angle with him within the Water, as you ſometimes angle with a *Cod-bait*, and *Trouts*, *Salmon-ſmelts*, *&c.* will eagerly take it.

You muſt always dib in a clear Water, and on the Surface thereof, and you are neither to have Lead nor Float on the Line. A hot, calm Day, or the Evening of a hot Day, is the moſt proper Time, and in ſtill Deeps, but ſometimes in Streams or Sides of them, eſpecially when the Water is clearing after a Flood. You may dib with the *Green-drake* both in Streams and Stills, all Hours of the Day: But the *Stone-fly* it moſt proper for the Streams

only, and that early and late. Yet if there be a whiſtling Wind in the Evening, dib in the ſtill Steeps with an artificial *Stone-fly*, where and when it will murder the beſt Fiſh. Sometimes you may pull off the Wings of the *Stone-fly*, and angle with it within Water.

When you bait any Sort of Fly, let your Fingers be dry: And in uſing it, keep out of Sight, if poſſible: For to fiſh fine and far off, is the great Rule in all Manner of Fly-angling.

To conclude, how delightful is every Species of this Diverſion, in ſuch a Paradiſe as the Poet deſcribes!

Behind, where Alders *from the Weather ſcreen,*
Before, *the* Lawn *preſents its lengthen'd Scene:*
Cloſe on that *Side trills ſoft the emptying* Brook,
While this *freſh* Woods *and ſloping* Hills *o'erlook:*
Thick over-head *the* Roſe *and* Woodbine *meet,*
Uniting Shade to Shade, and Sweet to Sweet:
The Pea *and bloomy* Bean *their Odours yield,*
And new-mown Hay *perfumes the fragrant Field.*
To hear the Nightingale *delights the Meads,*
And Graſshoppers *chirp ſhrill amid the Reeds;*
While from the Pinfold, there, the blating Sheep
Chear the ſtill Twilight, and divert from Sleep:
The Gale's *Perfume, the* Echo's *mimic Sound,*
The Nightbird's *Song, and Low of* Kine *around:*
In hollow Banks the Hum of muſt'ring Bees,
And Zephyrs *whiſp'ring ſoft amid the Trees.*

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

Of Rock and Sea-Fiſhing.

I Before obſerved, that when I ſpeak of Rock or Sea-fiſhing, I only extract what others have written, having never practiſed that Diverſion myſelf.

Rock-fiſhing is to be followed only during the Summer Seaſon, and is chiefly practiſed in the South and South-weſt Parts of *England*, and in ſome Places in *Ireland*. In this laſt-mentioned Country, the Rocks of *Dunlery*, which are eight or ten Miles in Length, and the neareſt Part about five Miles Eaſtward of *Dublin*, are remarkable for this Way of Fiſhing.

In freſh Water Rivers you are obliged to angle with a very fine Line; but in Rock-fiſhing your Line ought to have at leaſt five or ſix Hairs in every Link. A Float is neceſſary, and two Hooks; one to reach the Bottom, and the other to keep in Mid-water. The beſt Time to follow this Sport, is when the Tide is half ſpent, and to be continued till within two Hours of high Water. The Morning and Evening are the moſt propitious Parts of the Day, provided that the Tide then favour your Deſign.

The Baits which are uſed generally in Rock-fiſhing, are the *Cockle*, the *Lob*, and the *Marſh-worm*. But there is another Sort, called the *Hairy-worm*, which is preferable to

all the reſt. *Hairy-worms*, if full grown, are near four Inches long, flat and broad, and reſemble an Earwig. They are found on the Sea-ſhore, when the ſalt Water has left it, and to be dug out with a Spade, as you would dig for *Earth-worms*. When you have waſhed them from their Filth and Dirt in ſalt Water, they will appear to be of a fine, pale, fleſh Colour. They are to be placed upon the Hook with their Heads foremoſt, leaving about an Inch to play in the Water.

The Angler muſt not be ſurprized if in Rock-fiſhing he ſometimes finds his Hook to be faſtened under Water. If he cannot get it looſe in two or three Offers, he has nothing to do but to wait with Patience, or take off his Line from the Rod, and make faſt the Top of it, that it may not be drawn into the Water. It often will be looſened in half a Quarter of an Hour, and ſometimes not till the Tide ebbs almoſt as low as the Place where it is faſtened. This Accident is occaſioned by an ill-favoured little Fiſh, called a *Cobler*, or *Miller's Thumb*, which, as ſoon as he has ſucked in the Bait, retires into the Cleft of the Rock, and turning him about, renders it impoſſible to diſengage him, till he has a mind to come out himſelf, or till the ſinking of the Water compels him to it. As there is but little Meat upon this Fiſh, and that too is reckoned unwholſome, his Fate, for the Trick he plays, generally is, to have a ſmall Stick thruſt

thruſt through his Eys, and then to be caſt into the Sea, where he ſwims till he dies.

The Rock-fiſher ought to have a ſtrong Rod jointed, which he may ſhorten upon occaſion, or keep it at its full Length, the better to command his Line. And the Line muſt be ſtrong, the better to endure pulling, when it ſhall happen to be faſtened to the Sea-weeds.

He muſt alſo be provided with a ſufficient Stock of every Thing that is requiſite, as Silk, Hooks, Lines, Wax, *&c.* leſt by Miſchance he may happen to break a Line or Hook. Nor muſt the *Landing-net* and *Landing-hook* be forgotten, which are abſolutely neceſſary when the Tide is low, or when you ſtand upon a Rock too high above the Water.

They who divert themſelves with catching *Crabs*, ſhould bait their Hooks with *Chicken-guts*, or with the Guts of Fiſh; and when they bring a *Crab* near the Surface of the Water, have their Landing-net ready, or weigh him on Shore with all the Expedition imaginable.

The Manner of Sea-fiſhing, as uſed by Gentlemen for Recreation, is either in a Boat or a Ship. When in a Boat, or Wherry, they ſeldom catch any other than *Whiting* and *Haddock*, and the former of theſe moſt frequently.

In order to divert yourſelf with this Kind of Fiſhing, you muſt firſt find the Place where *Whitings* reſort, by obſerving diligently the *Sea Gulls*; for where they hover, eſpecially when they fly down, and ſeem to dip

tem-

themſelves in the Water, you may conclude that a Scale of *Whitings* are there. In this Place you muſt caſt anchor, and prepare your Fiſh-tackle. You will not have occaſion to uſe a Rod, which is here altogether uſeleſs. Faſten one End of your *Pater-noſter-line* to the Inſide of the Boat, with half a Dozen Hooks, each half a Yard diſtant from the other; and having baited them with *Hairy-worms*, if you can get them, (if not, with the *Lob* or the *Marſh-worms*,) caſt it into the Sea. You need not wait long before you draw it up; neither have you any Occaſion to hold it in your Hand, to know when the Fiſh bite: For as *Whitings* are a very greedy Fiſh, they will quickly gorge the Bait, and by that Means make themſelves faſt to your Hooks.

When you fiſh for *Haddocks*, your Line muſt be deep in the Water, and your Hook baited with two or three *Lob-worms*: Your Tackle muſt be ſtrong; for they ſtruggle hard, eſpecially if they have arrived to a tolerable Growth.

As to the other Part of *Sea-fiſhing*, namely in a Ship under ſail, your Line ought to be ſixty Fathom in Length, having a large Hook affixed to it, and a Piece of Lead ſufficient to keep it as deep under Water as poſſible. Your Line muſt be made of Hemp, and faſtened to the Gamel of the Ship.

Cod, *Mackerel*, and large *Haddock*, are the Fiſh uſually taken this Way, and ſometimes *Ling*:

Ling: The Bait for them, except for the *Mackerel*, is a Piece of *raw Beef*; and it is ſcarce poſſible to feel either of them bite, even tho' you hold the Line in your Hand, by Reaſon of the continual Motion of the Ship.

It is in vain to fiſh for *Mackerel*, except when the Ship lies by, or is becalmed. A Piece of ſcarlet Cloth hung upon a Hook, is the firſt Bait that is uſed, which never fails of anſwering the Intent it was deſigned for. And when you have taken a *Mackerel*, cut a thin Piece off from the Tail, a little above the Fin, and place it upon your Hook, and you need not fear taking many of them. Thus one or two will ſerve for Baits, till you are tired with the Sport. One *Mackerel*, if dreſſed as ſoon as it is taken, will be preferable to a Dozen that are brought to Shore.

Some Gentlemen and Ladies, who live near the Sea-ſide, divert themſelves, during the Summer Seaſon, in catching *Shrimps* and *Prawns*. For this, the Time of the Tide muſt be punctually obſerved, and the Perſon ready to go upon the Rocks as ſoon as the Water begins to leave them. A Net muſt be provided in the Shape of a Cabbage-net, but deeper, and the Meſhes ſmaller: This is to be faſtened to a Bow with a Handle, the ſame in Shape and Size with a Tennis-ball Racket. Obſerve the Hollows between the Rocks, and eſpecially thoſe in which there are many Sea-weeds, for under them the *Shrimps* and *Prawns* take ſhelter. And all that you have to do, is,

to

to thruſt your Net cloſe to the Side of the Rock, under a Part of thoſe Weeds; and then take it up, and turn out what you have taken into a Pail or little Tub.

I conclude this *Treatiſe of Angling* with turning the *Reader's* Meditation into the ſame Channel to which I firſt directed it; the Providence of *Him*, at whoſe Command, for the Uſe and Advantage of *Mankind*,

Forthwith the Sounds *and* Seas, *each* Creek *and* Bay,
With Fry *innumerable ſwarm, and Shoals*
Of Fiſh, *that with their* Fins *and ſhining* Scales
Glide under the green Wave, *in* Sculls *that oft'*
Bank the Mid-ſea. Part ſingle, *or with* Mate
Graze the Sea-weed, *their Paſture, and thro' Groves*
Of Coral *ſtray*; *or ſporting with quick Glance,*
Shew to the Sun their wav'd Coats *dropp'd with Gold:*
Or, in their pearly Shells, *at Eaſe attend*
Moiſt Nutriment; *or under* Rocks *their Food*
In jointed Armour watch. On ſmooth the Seal
And bended Dolphins *play: Part*, huge *of* Bulk,
Wall'wing, unwieldy, enormous in their Gait,
Tempeſt the Ocean: *There* Leviathan,
Hugeſt of living Creatures, on the Deep,
Stretch'd like a Promontory, ſleeps or ſwims
And ſeems a moving Lake; *and at his* Gills
Draws in, and at his Trunk *ſpouts out a* Sea.

MILTON.

End of the THIRD PART.

A P-

APPENDIX.

DISCOURSE I.

Of Fiſh-Ponds.

AS every Gentleman who can afford to make himſelf a *Fiſh-Pond*, will, it is preſumed, have the Work done, or at leaſt over-looked, by Perſons skilful in ſuch Operations, I ſhall take no notice of that mechanical Part, which could be of little Service here. But the following Extracts, from Writers who have treated philoſophically of this Matter, will doubtleſs be uſeful and entertaining.

It has been obſerved, that every Kind of Fiſh requires a certain Depth of Water to maintain itſelf in; the ſmaller Sorts delighting and thriving in ſhallower Waters than the greater; and theſe Waters are more or leſs nouriſhing to ſome Fiſh, as they paſs through different

different *Strata*, or Beds of Earth, every Kind of Earth giving its Tincture to the Waters paſſing through it, or joining with it. The moſt nouriſhing Waters for *Carp*, are ſuch as are found in Heathy-Grounds, which are commonly of a ſandy Soil; and if it is poſſible to chuſe the Situation of a Pond, it is counted much better to have it near the Bottom of Hills, that upon the Fall of great Rains may waſh down Inſects, and other nouriſhable Matter into it: And if it could be contrived, the Water ſhould be always current through it. Where this happens, the ſame Fund of Water will maintain one third Part more Fiſh than it would do, if it was only a ſtill Water.

In the Making of a Pond, we ought to contrive, that it may have all Degrees of Depth as far as ſix Feet; for if the Fiſh happen to breed in it, the young Fry or Spawn muſt have ſhallow Water to live and ſwim in; and the Spawn itſelf, while it is in the Egg, would be unfruitful was it to lie in deep Water. Again, as the young Fiſh grow bigger, they change their Station more and more towards the Deep, till they become of a fit Size to breed and produce others.

It is rarely known that in a good breeding Pond the Fiſh ever come to be very large; for the Number of them become ſo great, that they over-ſtock the Water, and are ſtraitened for Food. I have been told, that where the ſhalloweſt Part of a Pond is about two

Feet

Feet in Water, neither *Carp*, *Pike*, *Tench*, or *Perch*, will breed in it, becauſe it is too deep for the Spawn to hatch, if the Fiſh ſhould be inclined to lay any; and in ſuch Places the Fiſh grow very large, and thrive a-pace, if they were at firſt rightly proportioned to the Quantity of Water, and put in at a right Age.

An Acre of Water (if all the Parts of the Pond, one with another, meaſure three Feet deep) may well enough bear ninety Brace of *Carps*, which is about a Rod of Water to each Fiſh; or elſe eighty Brace of *Carps*, and twenty Brace of *Tench*; and ſo in Proportion for every ten Brace of *Carp* wanting, allow twenty Brace of *Tench*. Theſe Fiſh delight to be together; and the viſcous Matter upon the Bodies of the *Tench* is often ſerviceable to ſuch *Carp* as have by Accident been wounded.

It is found by Experience, that both theſe Kinds of Fiſh thrive much better in old Ponds than thoſe that have been newly made; and there is this Reaſon for it, that in a Pond newly cut or dug, the Water is not all of one Piece, or partaking of the ſame Qualities, which it muſt have ſufficient Time to draw from the Earth, and circulate through, or mix with every Part alike of the Water; for it is a Maxim, that Fiſh never thrive which have any Change of Water after they are two Years old, and therefore always ſtock Ponds with Store of the ſecond Year.

It

It is likewiſe obſervable, that a Plantation of Trees too near a Pond, is apt to infect the Water with its falling Leaves; but, on the other Hand, Shelter is neceſſary, and is much the beſt, as it conſiſts of Herbs and Plants, which naturally grow in the Waters, ſuch as *Water-Lillies*, *Pond-Weeds*, and *Flags*, which feed and afford a great Number of Inſects for the Fiſh to feed upon, and help to guard them from the too great Heats of the Sun: But chiefly theſe Weeds are uſeful to *Pike* and *Perch*, and they are better fed Fiſh, and much larger in ſuch Ponds, than where they have only a naked Water. The *Pike* being a Fiſh of Prey, will admit of no Fiſh to abide with it but the *Perch*, and that only avoids the voracious Appetite of the *Pike* by Means of the thorny Fins on its Back. In theſe Ponds however, it is a common Practice to fling in a Parcel of *Roach* for the Food of the *Jacks*. Theſe, as well as the *Carp* and *Tench*, may be fed with Blood and Bran mixed together, Raſpings of Bread, or the Entrails of Fowl or Sheep; and, if they are regularly uſed to be fed in this Way, at a conſtant Hour and Place of the Pond, they will in a ſhort Time become undaunted, and feed before us.

It is proper to caſt in Bavins in ſome Places not far from the Side, and in the moſt ſandy Spots, both for Fiſh to ſpawn upon, and to defend the young Fry, eſpecially the Spawn of the *Carp* and *Tench*.

All

All Authors adviſe, that you make Choice of ſuch a Place for your Pond, that it may be refreſhed with a little Rill, or with Rain-water running or falling into it; by which Fiſh are both more inclined to breed, and are refreſhed and fed the better.

Such Ponds as are large, and have moſt Gravel and Shallows where Fiſh may ſport themſelves, are held to afford Fiſh of the pureſt Taſte. And in all Ponds it is beſt for Fiſh to have ſome retiring Place, as hollow Banks, or Shelves, or Roots of Trees, to keep them from Danger; and, when they think fit, from the extream Heat of Summer, and Cold in Winter.

Cleanſe your Pond, if you expect either Profit or Pleaſure, once every three or four Years, and then let it lie dry ſome Months. If you ſow Oats in the Bottom, it is eſteemed good, for the Fiſh feed the faſter. And your Pond being ſometimes let dry, you may obſerve what Kind of Fiſh either increaſes or thrives beſt in that Water; for they differ much both in their Breeding and Feeding.

Carps and *Tench* thrive and breed beſt when no other Fiſh is put with them into the ſame Pond; for all other Fiſh devour their Spawn, or at leaſt the greateſt Part of it. Clods of Graſs thrown into any Pond feed the Carps in Summer; and Garden-Earth and Parſley refreſh them when ſick. When you ſtore your Breeding-Pond, put into it two or three

three *Melters* for one *Spawner*; but in a barely feeding Pond, no Care is to be taken, whether there be moſt male or female *Carps*.

DISCOURSE II.

Of the Laws of Angling.

THE Laws of *England* being all public, Ignorance of their Contents excuſes no Offender. It will not be amiſs therefore to ſay ſomething of thoſe which concern the Angler, that he may have a certain Knowledge, how, without Offence, to demean himſelf amongſt his Neighbours, when he goes about his Sport.

Tho' this Recreation be ſimply in itſelf lawful; yet none ſhould go on another's Ground, without the Licence of the immediate Owner. But if one have Licence to enter into a Cloſe for ſuch a Space of Time, tho' he practiſe Angling all that Time, he is not a Treſpaſſer, becauſe his Fiſhing is no Abuſe of his Licence; but this is to be underſtood only of Running-Streams, and not of Pits, Ponds, and ſtanding Pools, the Owner whereof hath a Property in the Fiſh. *Brook.*

No Felony can be committed by taking Fiſh out of their natural Liberty in Rivers, becauſe they are no Man's Property; but Felony may be committed of Fiſhes in a Trunk, Net, or Pond, becauſe they are not at their natural Liberty. *Coke* Inſt. 3.

If

If I continue fiſhing in another Man's Ground after Warning by the Owner, or his Servant thereunto authorized, the Owner, or his Servant, by his Command, may put me off by Force, but not beat me, except in caſe of Reſiſtance by me: For then I, by reſiſting, make the Aſſault: But if he beat me, I not reſiſting, in that caſe he makes the Aſſault, and I may beat him in Defence of my Perſon, and to free myſelf from his Violence. 9 *Ed.* IV. 21. *&c.*

If I leave my Angle-rod behind in Another's Ground, he may take it Damage-feaſant; but he can neither take it from my Perſon by Force, nor break it, but he is a Treſpaſſer to me. *Reynel* and *Champernoon*'s Caſe.

None ſhall take *Salmons* betwixt the 8th of *September*, and the 11th of *November*, nor young *Salmons* with Nets or other Engines, at Mill-pools, betwixt the Middle of *April* and the 24th of *June*, on pain of having their Nets and Engines burnt for the firſt Offence; for the ſecond, to ſuffer a Quarter of a Year's Impriſonment; for the third, a Year's Impriſonment; and after to have their Puniſhment increaſed according to the Treſpaſs: And in Places where freſh Waters are, Overſeers of this Statute ſhall be aſſigned and ſworn to enquire of the Offenders. *Weſtm.* 2. 47. 13 *Ed.* I. *cap.* 47.

None ſhall uſe any Net, Device, or Engine whatſoever, to deſtroy, kill, or take the Spawn or Fry of *Eels*, *Pike*, *Salmon*, or of a-

ny

ny other Fiſh; nor take *Salmons* or *Trouts*, not being in Seaſon; nor take or kill *Pikes* ſhorter than ten Inches, *Salmons* than ſixteen, *Trouts* than eight, or *Barbels* than twelve, or more; nor ſhall uſe any Engine or Device whatſoever to take Fiſh, other than and except an Angle, or a Net or Tramel of two Inches and a half Meſh or Maſk; on pain to forfeit 20 *s.* the Fiſh ſo wrongfully taken, and the Net or Engine ſo wrongfully uſed. 1 *Eliz. cap.* 17.

Every Perſon who, between the firſt Day of *March* and the laſt of *May*, ſhall do any Act whereby the Spawn of Fiſh ſhall be deſtroyed, ſhall forfeit the Inſtruments, and likewiſe 40 *s.* one Moiety to the Poor, and the other to the Proſecutor. *Stat. 3. Car. 2. cap. 9.*

Whoever fiſhes in the River *Severn* with, or ſhall make uſe of, any Engine or Device, whereby any *Salmon*, *Trout*, or *Barbel*, under the Length appointed by the *Stat.* 1 *Eliz. c.* 17. ſhall be taken or killed, or ſhall fiſh with any Net for *Salmon-Peale*, *Pike*, *Carp*, *Trout*, *Barbel*, *Chub*, or *Grayling*, the Meſh whereof ſhall be under two Inches and a half ſquare from Knot to Knot, or above twenty Yards in Length and two in Breadth, or above fifty in Length and ſix in Breadth in the Wing of the Net, in the ſaid River, from *Ripplelock Stake* to *Glouceſter Bridge*; or above ſixty in Length, below *Glouceſter Bridge*, and ſix Yards in Breadth in the Wing of the Net; or ſhall fiſh with more than one of theſe Nets at once,

once, or ſhall uſe any Device for taking the Fry of *Eels*, ſhall forfeit 5 *s.* for every Offence, and the Fiſh ſo taken, and the Inſtruments, to be divided as above. *Ibidem.*

Perſons taking Fiſh by any Device, in any ſeveral Water or River, or aſſiſting therein, without the Owner's Conſent, ſhall make ſuch Recompence, and within ſuch Time, as the Juſtice of Peace ſhall appoint, not exceeding treble Damages, and ſuch Sum to the Overſeers of the Poor as he ſhall alſo appoint, not exceeding 10 *s.* The Conviction is by Conſent of the Party, or Oath of one Witneſs; the Proſecution to be in one Month. In Default of Payment, to be levied by Diſtreſs and Sale; and for Want of Diſtreſs, the Offender to be committed to the Houſe of Correction, for any Time not exceeding one Month, unleſs he gives Bond, with one or more Sureties, to the Party injured, not to offend again. *Stat.* 22 *and* 23 *Car.* II. *c.* 25.

If any Perſon ſhall keep any Net, Angle, Leap, Piche, or other Engine for taking Fiſh, (except the Makers or Sellers of them, or the Owners or Occupiers of Rivers or Fiſheries) ſuch Engines, if they ſhall be found fiſhing without the Conſent of the Owner or Occupier, or ſuch other Perſon or Perſons as he ſhall authorize and appoint, ſhall be ſeized; and any Perſon, by a Warrant under the Hand and Seal of a Juſtice of Peace, may ſearch the Houſes of Perſons prohibited and ſuſpected, and ſeize to their own Uſe, or deſtroy ſuch Engines. 4 *and* 5 *W. and M. c.* 23.

No

No Servant ſhall be queſtioned for killing a Treſpaſſer, within his Maſter's Liberty, who will not yield, if not done out of former Malice: Yet if the Treſpaſſer kills any ſuch Servant it is Murder. 21 *Eliz.*

The *Stat.* 1 *Eliz. c.* 17. not to reſtrain the taking of *Smelts*, *Loaches*, *Minnows*, *Bull-heads*, *Gudgeons*, or *Eels*, with Nets or Engines formerly uſed, ſo that no other Fiſh be taken therewith; nor to abridge any former Privilege of Conſervancy lawfully enjoyed, or fiſhing in *Tweed*, *Uske*, or *Wye*, or in Waters let to Farm by the Crown; ſo that the Spawn or Fry of Fiſh be not therein wilfully deſtroyed.

None ſhall unlawfully break, cut down, cut out, or deſtroy any Head or Heads, Dam or Dams, of any Ponds, Pools, Moats, Stagnes, Stews, or ſeparate Pits, wherein Fiſh are, or ſhall happen to be put by the Owners or Poſſeſſors thereof; or ſhall wrongfully fiſh in the ſame, to the intent to deſtroy, kill, take, or ſteal away any of the ſame Fiſh againſt the Mind of the Owners thereof, without Licenſe of the Owner, on pain of ſuffering three Months Impriſonment, and to be bound to good Behaviour for ſeven Years after: And the Party, in Seſſions or elſewhere, ſhall recover treble Damages againſt the Delinquent. 5 *Eliz.*

None ſhall erect a Weir or Weirs along the Sea-ſhore, or in any Haven or Creek, or within 5 Miles of the Mouth of any Haven or Creek, or ſhall willingly take or deſtroy any Spawn, Fry, or Brood of any Sea-fiſh, on Pain of 10 *l.*

10 *l.* to be divided between the King and the Proſecutor. Neither ſhall Any fiſh in any of the ſaid Places, with any Net of a leſs Meſh than three Inches and a half between Knot and Knot (except for *Smoulds* in *Norfolk* only) or with a Canvas-Net, or other Engine, whereby the Spawn or Fry of Fiſh may be deſtroyed, on Pain of forfeiting the ſaid Net or Engine, and 10 *s.* in Money, to be divided between the Poor and the Proſecutor. 3 *Jac. cap.* 12.

By the Statute of 17 *Ric.* II. *cap.* 9. Juſtices of Peace ſhall be Conſervators of the Statute of *Weſtm.* 2. *cap.* 47. and 13 *Ric.* II. *cap.* 19. and ſhall have Power to ſearch all Weirs, leſt by their Straitneſs the Fry of Fiſh may be deſtroyed. And the ſaid Juſtices ſhall have Power to appoint and ſwear Under-Conſervators, to hear and determine Offences of this Kind, and to puniſh the Offenders by Impriſonment and Fine, whereof the Under-Conſervator which informs is to have the half. The Mayor or Wardens of *London* have, by the ſame Statute, like Power in the *Thames*, from *Stanes* to *London*, and in *Medway* as far as the City Grant extends. And every Juſtice of Peace before whom ſuch Offender ſhall be convicted, may cut in Pieces, and deſtroy all and every the Nets and Engines whatſoever, wherewith the Offender is apprehended.

Receipts

Receipts for Dreſſing of Fiſh.

TO dreſs a *Chub*, ſcale and waſh him clean, and take out his Guts; put Tops of Roſemary, Thyme, Sweet Marjoram, Parſley, and Winter Savoury, into his Belly, and then tie him with two or three Splinters to a Spit, and roaſt him, baſted often with Vinegar, or rather Verjuice and Butter, and good Store of Salt mixed with it. This Way makes him a good Diſh of Meat, and dries up the watery Humour, with which all *Chubs* abound. Other Fiſh may be dreſſed thus, as *Barbel*, *Tench*, *Bream*, *&c.* baſting them with Butter only.

Or, when you have ſcaled a *Chub*, cut off his Tail, Fins, and Gills; waſh him very clean, and taking out the Guts, ſlit him thro' the Middle; then give him three or four Scothes on the Back with your Knife, and broil him leiſurely on a clear Fire, baſting him with the beſt ſweet Butter and Salt, to which add a little Thyme cut ſmall, or bruiſed into the Butter. Turn him often whilſt he is broiling.

To dreſs a *Trout*, waſh and dry him with a clean Napkin; then open him, and having taken out his Guts and Blood, and cut away his Gills, wipe him very clean within, but waſh him not, and give him three Scotches with

with the Knife to the Bone on one Side only: After which take a clean Kettle, and put in as much Vinegar, with a little White-wine and Water, as will cover the Fiſh you intend to boil. Then throw into the Liquor a good Quantity of Salt, the Rind of a Lemon, a Handful of ſliced Horſe-radiſh Root, with a little Bundle of Roſemary, Thyme, Sweet Marjoram, Parſley, and Winter-Savoury. Set your Kettle upon a quick Wood-fire, and let your Liquor boil up to the Height before you put in your Fiſh. If there be many, put one by one, and whilſt they are boiling, beat up the Butter for your Sauce, with a Ladleful or two of the hot Liquor, an Anchovy or two being diſſolved in it. Being boiled enough, immediately pour the Liquor from the Fiſh, and laying them in a Diſh, pour your Butter upon them, ſtrewing plentifully over it ſhaved Horſe-radiſh Root, and a little pounded Ginger. Garniſh the Sides of your Diſh, and the Fiſh itſelf, with a ſliced Lemon or two. In this Manner you may dreſs a Samlet: Alſo *Grayling*, *Carp*, *Bream*, *Roach*, *Dace*, may be dreſſed after the ſame Manner, only they are to be ſcaled, which a *Trout* never is. A *Pike* too may be thus dreſſed, the Slime being well ſcoured off with Water and Salt; and a *Perch* and *Tench*.

To ſtew *Salmon*, take the Fiſh, draw it, ſcotch the Back, put it whole or in Pieces into a Stew-pan, with Vinegar, White-wine, and Water, as much as will cover the Fiſh: Put

alſo to it ſome whole Cloves, large Mace, ſliced Nutmeg, ſliced Ginger, a Bay-Leaf, a Bundle of the Tops of Roſemary, ſtripped Thyme, ſweet Marjoram, Winter-ſavoury, and picked Parſley, ſome whole Pepper, Currants, Salt, Butter, and an Orange in half; ſtew all leiſurely together, and, when well-ſtewed, diſh them with carved Sippets; lay on the Spices and ſliced Lemon; run it over with Butter beaten up in ſome of the Liquor it was ſtewed in. Thus you may alſo ſtew any other Fiſh, as *Carp*, *Pike*, *Perch*, &c.

Take a large *Carp*, alive, if poſſible, ſcour him clean with Water and Salt; then open him, and put him, with his Blood and his Liver, into a ſmall Kettle: Then take Sweet Marjoram, Thyme, and Parſley, of each half an Handful, a Sprig of Roſemary, and another of Savoury, bind them into two or three ſmall Bundles, and put them to your Fiſh, with three or four whole Onions, twenty pickled Oiſters, and three Anchovies. Then pour upon your *Carp* as much Claret as will cover him, ſeaſoned well with Salt, Cloves, Mace, ſliced Nutmegs, and the Rinds of Oranges and Lemons. Cover your Pot, and ſet it over a quick Fire, till it be ſufficiently boiled. When you take out the *Carp*, lay it with the Broth in the Diſh, and pour upon it ſome of the beſt freſh Butter melted, and beaten with half a Dozen Spoonfuls of the Broth, the Yolks of two or three Eggs, and ſome of the Herbs ſhred. Garniſh your Diſh with Lemons.

The

The beſt Way of dreſſing a large *Eel* is this. Waſh him in Water and Salt; then pull off his Skin below his Vent, and not much further: Take out his Guts as clean as you can, but waſh him not; then give him three or four Scotches with a Knife, and put into his Belly and thoſe Scotches the Tops of ſweet Herbs, as Roſemary, Sweet-Marjoram, Winter-Savoury, Thyme, and Parſley; and Anchovy, with a little Nutmeg grated. Your Herbs and Anchovies muſt be cut very ſmall, and mixed with good Butter and Salt. Then pull his Skin over him all but his Head, which you are to cut off, that you may tie his Skin about that Part where his Head grew, ſo as to keep all his Moiſture within the Skin. Faſten him with Packthread to a Spit; roaſt him leiſurely, and baſte him with Water and Salt, till his Skin breaks, and then with Butter. Having roaſted him enough, let what was put into his Belly be mixed with beaten Butter for his Sauce. You may *ſpitchcock*, or broil him, with the ſame Ingredients.

To collar *Eels*, take thoſe that are large, flay, draw, and wipe them clean with a Linnen Cloth; part them down the Back, and take out the Bone; then take the ſweet Herbs before mentioned, mince them all ſmall, and mingle them with Nutmeg, Cloves, Ginger, Pepper, all beaten into Powder; and Salt. Strew this on the Inſide of the *Eels*; then roll them up like a Collar of Brawn, and put them in a clean Linnen Cloth, tied at both Ends,

and bound close with Packthread. Boil them in Water, Vinegar, and Salt, till they be very tender. But let the Liquor boil before you put in the *Eels*. When boiled enough, take them out, and when they and the Liquor are cold, put them in again, and you may therein keep them five or six Days, or more. But if you will have the *Eels* to keep a Month or more, put no Herbs to them, but very highly season them with Cloves, Mace, Nutmeg, Pepper, and Salt, and then proceed as before, *&c.* Boil the Pickle they are kept in every fourteen Days, and add the Water and Vinegar at the Boiling.

Mr. *Walton* gives this excellent Receipt for roasting a *Pike*. First, open your *Pike* at the Gills, and if there be Occasion, cut also a little Slit towards the Belly: Out of these take his Guts, and keep his Liver, which you are to shred very small with Thyme, Sweet-Marjoram, and a little Winter Savoury: To these put some pickled Oysters, and two or three Anchovies, both Oyster and Anchovies whole; for the latter will melt, and the other should not: To these you must add a Pound of sweet Butter, which you are to mix with the Herbs that are shred, and let them all be well salted. If the *Pike* be above a Yard long, the Quantity of Butter should be more than a Pound; or if he be under, then less will suffice. These, being thus mixed, with a Blade or two of Mace, must be put into the *Pike*'s Belly, and then his Belly so sewed up, if possible,

poſſible, as to keep in all the Butter; if not, as much of it as you poſſibly can, without taking off the Scales. Next thruſt the Spit through his Mouth out at his Tail; and then take four, five, or ſix ſplit Sticks, or very thin Lathes, and a convenient Quantity of Tape or Filletting: The Lathes are to be tied round about the *Pike*'s Body from his Head to his Tail, and the Tape tied ſomewhat thick, to prevent his breaking or falling off from the Spit. Let him be roaſted very leiſurely, and often baſted with Claret Wine, Anchovies, and Butter mixed together, and alſo with what Moiſture falls from him into the Pan. When you have roaſted him ſufficiently, you are to hold under him, when you cut the Tape that ties him, the Diſh that you propoſe to eat him out of; and let him fall into it, with the Sauce that is roaſted in his Belly, by which Means the *Pike* will be kept unbroken and compleat. Then, to the Sauce which was within, and alſo that in the Pan, add a ſufficient Quantity of the beſt Butter, and ſqueeze the Juice of three or four Oranges. Laſtly, you may either put into the *Pike*, with the Oyſters, two Cloves of Garlick, and take it whole out when the *Pike* is cut off the Spit; or, to give the Sauce a high Flavour, let the Diſh be rubbed. The uſing or not uſing this Garlick is left to your Diſcretion.

The following is a general Way for all Sorts of Fiſh. To boil your *Fiſh*, take one Quart of White-wine, or a Pint of White-

wine Vinegar, three or four Quarts of Water, a Bunch of ſweet Herbs, and a good Handful of Salt: Let it boil a Quarter of an Hour before the Fiſh be put in. And to make Sauce, take a few Cloves and Mace, Anchovies, and half Pint of White-wine: Or you may, otherwiſe, melt your Butter with a little Water and the Juice of Lemon, with ſome Nutmeg, Horſe-radiſh, and Lemon-peel, an Onion, and two Drops of Spirit of Salt, one Pint of ſtewed Oyſters, and a little whole Pepper among the Butter. Let not the Onion or Horſe-radiſh be put into the Diſh of Fiſh with the Sauce.

To boil a *Tench*, let the Liquor be made of Water and Salt, a Bunch of Thyme, an Onion, Lemon peel, a little Horſe-radiſh, and a Quarter of a Pint of Vinegar. Take no more Water than is ſufficient to cover the *Tench*, which muſt be put in before the Water boils, to prevent them from cracking. When they are boiled, make your Sauce with two Anchovies, boiled in a little Water till they are diſſolved. Then let it ſtand to ſettle, drain it off, and add what Quantity of Butter you think fit, half a Pint of ſtewed Oyſters, and a Quarter of a Pint of Shrimps. Garniſh the Diſh with Lemon and Muſhrooms.

FINIS.

BRITISH MUSEUM

A N

INDEX.

Wherein ſeveral Terms uſed by ANGLERS are occaſionally explained.

A.

ACTION and Contemplation compared, Page 6, 7.
Angler, Directions concerning him, 251. for his Choice of Stands, Baits, *&c.* 252--260.
Angling praiſed and defended, 5——13. Its Antiquity 5. Utility 6. Lawfulneſs, 10. Dignity, *ib.* Sir *Henry Wotton*'s Character of it, 13.
Angling, Practice of, interſperſed in the firſt and ſecond, and through the whole third Part.
Angling, Seaſons of, 262--271. Various Methods of, 279. with Running-Line, 280--284. Floats 284, 285, 286. At Top with a Worm, 287. At Ground for ſmall Fiſh, 289. Ledger-Bait, 290.
Angling-Scene, Deſcription of one in Verſe, 294.
Angling, Laws of, 306--311.
Ant-fly, to procure, 83. to uſe, 84.
Apparatus, the Angler's. See the whole firſt Part.
Arm a Hook, how to, 52.
Aſh-grub Bait, 77. Fly, 91.

B.

Bacon, for Bait, 94.
Bags of Air in Fiſh, their Uſe, 25.
Bags for Anglers, 59.
Baits, natural, an Account of them, 61--96. Verſes on, 81, 96. Artificial or factitious, 96--127. of ſeveral Fiſh, in Verſe, 257.

INDEX.

Barbel, his Deſcription, Character, and Haunts, 197, 198. Baits, 199. how to angle for, 200. Verſes on, 201.
Bark-worm, 77.
Bawk, a Knot in a Hair or Link.
Bed. Hairs bed well when they twiſt kindly.
Bedding, the Body of an artificial Fly.
Berries, ſeveral Sorts for Baits, 90.
Black-bee for Bait, 94.
Bleak, Deſcription, Baits, and Manner of taking him, 234, 235. Verſes on him, 236.
Bobs, the two Sorts of them, 70, 71.
Bobbing for Eels, 221.
Brandling-worm, 63, 66.
Bream, his Deſcription, Character, and Haunts, 201, 202. Baits 202, 203. Large Directions in angling for him, 203---208. Verſes on him, 209. Sea-*Bream*, 246.
Breck, a Knot in the Joint of a Rod.
Brood of Waſps, Hornets, and Humble-bees, 85.
Broggling or Sniggling for Eels, 220.
Browne, Mr. Verſes of his, 81. 261.
Bull-heads for Baits, 87. Deſcribed, 238.
Bull-trout in *Northumberland*, 141.

C.

Cadews, the ſeveral Sorts of them, 72--74. how to angle with, 74, 75. Artificial, how to make, 76.
Carp, his Character, 185, 186. Fecundity, 22, 186. Strangely deſtroy'd, 187. Manner of Spawning, *ib.* Baits and Haunts, 188---191. Ways of taking, 190, 191, 192. Verſes on him and the *Tench*, 195, 196.
Caterpillars, Cabbage, and Crabtree-worms, 87.
Char, a local Fiſh, Account of him, 240, 241.
Cheeſe for Bait, 90.
Chine a Salmon, cut him up.

Chub, or Chevin, his Character, 210. how to catch, *ib.* 211. Baits, 211--214. Haunts and Seaſons, 213. Biting-time, 214. Verſes on, 215. To dreſs, 312.
Clap-bait, or Cow-turd-bob, 71.
Cobler, or Miller's-Thumb, an Impediment to Rock-fiſhers, 296.
Cock. A Float cocks when it ſwims upright above the Water.
Cockſpur Cadews, 72.
Codbaits, the beſt Way to carry and keep, 59. See Cadews.
Cod-fiſh, Remark on them, 19. Their Fecundity, 22.
Cold, Verſes on its Effect on Fiſhes, 192.
Conger, or great Sea-Eel, 222.
Cricket, Houſe, for Baits, 89. Water, or Creeper, *ib.*
Coningſton-Mere, famous for Chars, 241.

D.

Dabbing, angling with a live Fly, 290--294.
Dace, his Character, 226. Baits, and Manner of taking him, *ib.*---230. Verſes on him, 230.
Davors, Mr. his Poem on Angling, 29, 31.
Dew-worm, 62.
Dibbing, or Dibbling, the ſame as Dabbing, 290----294.
Dock-worm, 79.
Drag, an Inſtrument to diſentangle the Line.
Dub-flies, ſee Flies, artificial.

E.

Earth-bob, or Grub, 70.
Earth-worms, what, 61, 62.
Earwig for Bait, 94.
Eel, his Character, and how produced, 216. Haunts, 217. Kinds, 218. Baits and Times of biting, *ib.* Chief Places, 219. Brogling or Snigling for him, 220. Bobbing, 221. Verſes on him, 223. To dreſs, 315.

Eel,

Eel or Elver Cake, 217, 220.
Eel-pouts deſcribed, 222.
Eyes of Fiſh for Bait, 93.

F.

Fern-fly, or Fern-bud, 94.
Fins of Fiſhes, their Uſe, 22.
Fin a Chub, cut him up.
Fiſh, general Obſervations on their Nature, 14--29. Their Element, 15. Clothing, 16. Numbers, 17. Paſſage, 19. Wars, 20, 21. Fecundity, 22. Food, 23. Figure, *ib.* 24. Uſe of their Tails and Fins, 24. Bags of Air, 25. Gills, 27. Other Parts, *ib.* Senſations, 28. Enumeration of their Enemies in Verſe, 261.
Fiſhermen, the Apoſtles ſo, 8, 9. Their plain Stile, 10.
Fiſh-ponds, a Diſcourſe of them, 301--306. Depth of them, 302. Proportion to a Number of Fiſh, 303. How infected, 304. Other Remarks, 305.
Fiſh-books mentioned in the Old Teſtament, 6.
Flag-worm, 79.
Flies, natural, 84.91--94. Verſes on 94. Artificial, 106--126. Verſes on, 126. How to uſe, 108. To make, 109, 110. 114, 115, 116. Catalogues of, 106, 107. 117—126.
Floats for Angling, 53--56. Of Cork, 53. To cement, 55. Double, 56. To angle with, 284, 285, 286.
Flounders, Deſcription, Haunts, and Manner of taking them, 243, 244. Verſes on them and others, 245. Sea, 246.
Fordige, or *Fordwich* Trout, 140.
Frogs for Bait, 93. Their wonderful Enmity to Pikes, 163.
Fruſh a Chub, dreſs him.

G.

Garden-worm, 62.

Gentles or Maggots, to procure, 79, 80. To imitate, 81.
Gildard, the Link of a Line.
Gills of Fiſhes, their Uſe, 27,
Gilt-tail-worm, 63.
Gobbet a Trout, cut him up.
Grabble. One fiſhes on the Grabble when the Line is ſunk with a running Plummet faſt to the Bottom, ſo that the Hook-Link plays in the Water.
Grain for Bait, 83.
Graſshoppers for Bait, 88.
Gray-drake-fly, 92. artificial, 120.
Grayling, his Character, 153. Haunts, 154. Seaſons, 155. Baits, and how to angle for, *ib.* Verſes on him, *ib.*
Green-drake-fly, 92. Artificial, 170.
Gudgeon, his Character, Haunts, and Baits, 231. Verſes on him, 232.
Guiniad, a local Fiſh, Account of him, 240, 241.

H.

Haddock, an Account of him, 248. how to take him, 298.
Hang a Fiſh, hook him.
Hairs for Lines, to chuſe and prepare, 39.
Haunts of ſeveral Fiſh, in Verſe, 253.
Hawthorn-fly, 93.
Hearing, Senſe of, enjoy'd by Fiſh, 28.
Hooks, Fiſh, how to make, 51. to chuſe, *ib.* to arm or whip, 52.
Hooking a Pike, 179.
Huxing for a Pike, 168.

K.

Kink. A Line kinks in Trowling when it is twiſted between the Top of the Rod and the Ring.
Kipper, what it means, 79.

L.

Lamprey for Bait, 88.
Lampreys in the *Severn*, 219. *Land-*

Landing-hook and Landing-net, 60.
Laws of Angling, 306 —— 311.
Leap, ſee *Salmon*.
Leaſh of Fiſh, three.
Leather-mouthed, the Meaning of that Term, 212.
Ledger-bait for a Pike, 165—168. To angle with, 290.
Leuwenhoeck, Mr. his Obſervation on the Fecundity of Fiſh, 22.
Limperis-Pool, where Tor-coch, are found, 241.
Lines, Angling, to prepare, 39. To dye, 40, 41. To make up, 42, 43. For Caſt-fly, 44. Running Worm, 46. Float, 47. Dibbing, *ib.* Ground, 48. Trowling, *ib.* Barbel and Chub, *ib.* Verſes on, 49. How to lead, 56.
Line-caſes, how to make, 58.
Loach for Bait, 87. Deſcribed, 237.
Lob-worm, 62.
Luce, ſee Pike.

M.

Mackerel, how to take, 299.
Magazine, the Angler's, 59. Verſes on, 61. for artificial Flies, 110, 112.
Maggots or *Gentles*, 79, 80.
Marrow or *Pith*, a Bait, 94.
Marſh or *Meadow-worm*, 64.
May-Flies, ſeveral Sorts of them, 91, 92, 93. artificial, 111, 120, 123. How to bait the natural ones, 293.
Miller's-Thumb, the ſame as Bull-head and Cobler.
Milton, his Lines on the Sea Fiſh, 300.
Minnow for Bait, 87. Deſcribed, 236, 237. Verſes on him and others, 239. Artificial, 288.
Months of Angling, artificial Flies for each, 117—126.
Moths for Bait, 93.

Mullets, Deſcription and Manner of taking them 244, 245.

N.

Needler, Mr. *Henry*, his Verſes on the Seaſons for Angling, 262.
Night-hooks, how to lay, 287.
Nowell, Dr. a great Angler, his Character, 11.

O.

Oak-worm, 68.
Oak-fly, 91.
Oat-Cake for Bait, 91.
Ointments or *Unguents*, 99——105.

P.

Paſtes for Bait, ſeveral Sorts of, 96—99. How to uſe, 99.
Palmer-worm and *Fly*, 68. Artificial, 109.
Perch, his Character, 181. Haunts and Biting-time, 182. Baits, 183, 184. How to angle for, *ib.* Verſes on, 184, 185.
Perriwinkle-bait, 95.
Pike, how produced, 156, 164, long-lived, 156, 157. deſcribed, 157. Haunts, Baits, and Biting-time, 158, 159, 164, 165, 177. Voraciouſneſs, 158, 160. Character, 161, 162. At enmity with Frogs, 169. Spawning, 162. How to take, 165. By a Ledger-bait, *ib.*——168. By Huxing, 168. With a dead Bait, *ib.* By Trowling, 169——175. By Snapping, 175, 176, 177. By Snaring and Hooking, 179. Verſes on, *ib.* 180. To Dreſs 316.
Piper Cadews, 72.
Plummets for Lines, 57, 58.
Pope, Mr. his Lines on Angling, 20. On the Rivers that compoſe the *Thames*, 279.
Pope, or Ruff, Deſcription and Manner of taking him, 233. Verſes on him, 234.
Providence, Inſtances of its Care, 18.

Pemble-

Pemble-mere, famous for Guiniads, 240.
Pouch. A Pike pouches when he ſwallows the Bait.
Prime, leap out of the Water.

Q.

Quills, how to dye, 156.

R.

Red-worm, 63.
Revelations, where generally made, 7.
Rivers, their Beauty and Uſefulneſs, 2——5. The principal in *England*, 271 — 278. Enumerated in Verſe, 274.
Roach, his Character and Seaſon, 223. Haunts and Baits, 224. Ways of Angling for him, 225. Verſes on him, *ib.*
Rocks, Fiſh taken on, 246, 247. Verſes on them, 249. Manner of taking them, 295, 296, 297.
Rods, when to provide, 33. How to chuſe and order, *ib.* 34. For the Ground Angle, 34. Fly-Angling, *ib.* For Roach, Dace, *&c.* 37. To colour, 36. Verſes on, 38.
Rud, a Kind of Roach, deſcribed, 224, 225. Verſes on him, 226.
Ruff, the ſame as Pope.
Ruff-coat Cadews, 73.
Running-Line, to angle with, 280 — 284.

S.

Salmon, his Haunts 129, 133, 135. Spawning-time, 129. Neceſſity of getting into the Sea, 130. His Leap, 131. Growth, 132. Baits, 133, 137. Times of Biting, 136. Verſes on, 131, 138. Laws for preſerving them, 307. How to dreſs, 313.
Salmon-Peale, his Haunts and Baits, 138.
Salmon-Spawn, for Bait, 86.
Samlet, *Salmon Smelt*, or *Salmon Fry*, 138.
Scale, any great Number of Fiſh together.

Seaſons for Angling deſcribed in Proſe and Verſe, 262——271.
Sea-Fiſhing, the Manner of it, 297——300.
Seven-Eyes for Bait, 88.
Severn, Laws of Angling there, 308.
Sheeps-blood Bait, 83.
Shrimps and *Prawns*, how to take them, 299.
Side a Haddock, cut him up.
Size of Fiſh that may be taken, 308.
Skeggers, a Sort of Salmons, 130.
Smelts, when, where, and how taken, 245.
Snails for Bait, 88.
Snapping for a Pike, 175, 176, 177.
Snaring a Pike, 179.
Sniggling for Eels, 220.
Solay a Bream, cut him up.
Splate a Pike, cut him up.
Stile of the ſacred *Writers*, a Remark on it, 9.
Stone-fly, 92. Artificial, 121.
Straw-worm Cadews, 73.
Sticklebag, his Deſcription, *&c.* 238.
Swallows, a Way of Angling for them, 235.

T.

Tag-tail Worm, 64.
Tails of Fiſhes, their Uſe, 24.
Thames, River, a particular Account of it, 272, 275, 276. and of the Rivers that fall into it, 276——279. In Verſe, 279.
Tench, his Character and Deſcription, 193. Baits, Haunts, Seaſon and Biting-time, 194, 195. Verſes on him and the Carp, 195, 196. To Dreſs, 318.
Thraſh, any Thing which ſwims down the Water, and incommodes the Angler.
Tickle-back, the ſame as *Sticklebag*.
Tor-coch, a local Fiſh, 241.
Trout, the Veniſon of the Waters, 139. Sorts of, 140, 141. Seaſons, 142. Haunts, 143. Baits, 144,

144, 145, 146. Places remarkable for, 145. How to angle for, 147 —— 151. Verſes on, 151, 152. Dibbing for, 291. To Dreſs 312.
Trout-lice or Sugs, 142.
Trounchen an Eel, cut him up.
Trowling for a Pike, 169 —— 175.
Tusk a Barbel, cut him up.
Twatchel-worm, 62.

U.

Veer your Line, let it out from the Reel after Striking.
Umber, ſee *Grayling*.
Unguents or Ointments for Bait, 99—105.

W.

Walton, Mr. his Liſt of Flies, 106, 107.
Water, Element of, 15.
Water-cricket or Water-louſe, 89.
Weirs, Law concerning them, 310.
Whet-ſtone for Anglers, 58.
Whiting Pollock, 247. Rock, *ib.* True 248. How to take them, 297, 298.
Whip a Hook, how to, 52.
White-grub or Bob, 70.
Winander-mere, famous for Chars, 240.
Wooll-bed or Canker-worm, 68.
Woodcock-fly, 91.
Worms, the ſeveral Sorts of them, 62 —— 70. How to keep, order, and ſcour, 65 —— 68.
Wotton, Sir *Henry*, a great Angler, 12. His Character of Angling, 13. Verſes of his. *ib.*

ERRATA.

PAGE 50. Title of Chap. III. *Landing-Lines*, read *Landing-Hooks*. p. 90. l. 10. *Bare erries*, r. *are Berries*. p. 132. l. 17. *all Yerking*, r. *Still Yerking*. p. 133. l. 15. *that*, r. *than*. p. 192. l. 30. *Doze*, r. *Ooze*. p. 294. l. 27. *blating*, r. *bleating*.